



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

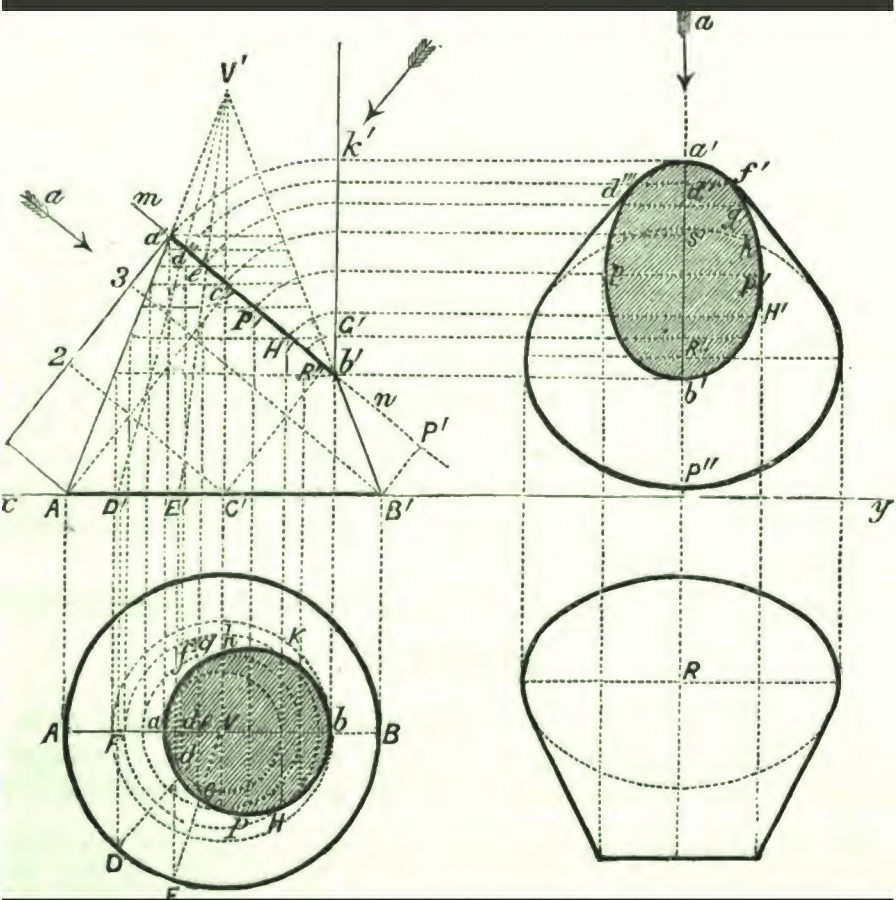
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>



*A graduated course of problems  
in practical plane and solid ...*

James Martin







A GRADUATED COURSE  
OF  
PROBLEMS IN PRACTICAL PLANE  
AND SOLID GEOMETRY,

TOGETHER WITH  
MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL PLANE  
AND SOLID GEOMETRY;  
ETYMOLOGY OF GEOMETRICAL TERMS, &c. &c.

BY  
JAMES MARTIN,  
HEAD MASTER OF THE ENDOWED SCHOOL, WEDGWOOD INSTITUTE, BURSLEM.  
*Author of "Elements of Euclid," &c.*



LONDON:  
GEORGE PHILIP & SON, 32 FLEET STREET;  
LIVERPOOL: CAXTON BUILDINGS, SOUTH JOHN STREET,  
AND 49 & 51 SOUTH CASTLE STREET.

1876.

183. g. 88.



## PREFACE.

---

THE present volume on Practical Geometry will be found to be suitable both for the Art-student and the Art-workman.

It falls into two distinct parts, viz., *Plane* and *Solid*.

It will be seen that though the problems in the *Plane* portion of the work are exceedingly numerous, they are classified in sections.

The *definitions* which precede the several sections, should be thoroughly mastered by the pupil before entering on the problems.

The *diagrams* are engraved with extreme care, and as is usual in works on Practical Geometry, *three* kinds of lines are used, viz., (1) *thin* lines, representing those which are given; (2) *dotted* lines, representing those used in the construction of the figure; and (3) *thick* lines, representing the solution of the problem.

Moreover, the two cardinal ideas, viz., what is *given*,



---

and what is *to be done*, are by a typographical expedient shown also in the enunciation.

Respecting the *solid* portion of the work, it will be found that the problems are carefully graduated, and are also arranged in sections.

In conformity with the usual practice, the *base-line* is always represented by the letters *xy*, and the *style* of lettering uniformly indicates whether a point, line, &c., is in space, in the vertical plane, or in the horizontal.

In order to make the geometrical terms used more instructive, a section on their derivation has been incorporated in the work.

Finally, in order to make the volume complete, it closes with an index of all the problems given in both parts.

JAMES MARTIN.

WEDGWOOD INSTITUTE,  
BURSLEM.

# CONTENTS.



	PAGE
ON DRAWING INSTRUMENTS . . . . .	vii
HINTS ON THE MANNER OF USING DRAWING INSTRUMENTS	xi
GENERAL HINTS ON DRAWING . . . . .	xii

## PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY.

### SECTION

I. LINES AND ANGLES . . . . .	1
II. TRIANGLES . . . . .	20
III. QUADRILATERAL FIGURES . . . . .	34
IV. CIRCLES, TANGENTS, AND ARCS . . . . .	44
V. POLYGONS . . . . .	56
VI. ELLIPSES, &c. . . . .	73
VII. INSCRIBED FIGURES . . . . .	87
VIII. DESCRIBED FIGURES . . . . .	115
IX. PROPORTIONALS . . . . .	124
X. SIMILAR FIGURES . . . . .	131
XI. EQUIVALENT AREAS . . . . .	137
XII. MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS . . . . .	167
XIII. SCALES . . . . .	181

<b>PRACTICAL SOLID GEOMETRY.</b>	
<b>SECTION</b>	<b>PAGE</b>
I. DEFINITIONS, &c. . . . .	187
II. PROJECTION OF POINTS, LINES, &c. . . . .	194
III. ELEMENTARY SOLIDS . . . . .	199
IV. TRACES OF LINES AND PLANES . . . . .	212
V. FURTHER PROJECTIONS OF SOLIDS . . . . .	226
VI. SECTIONS . . . . .	245
VII. PENETRATIONS OF SOLIDS . . . . .	260
 <b>MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY</b>	 <b>264</b>
<b>MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL SOLID GEOMETRY</b>	<b>273</b>
<b>QUESTIONS IN PLANE GEOMETRY . . . . .</b>	<b>277</b>
<b>QUESTIONS IN SOLID GEOMETRY . . . . .</b>	<b>280</b>
<b>ETYMOLOGY OF GEOMETRICAL TERMS . . . . .</b>	<b>282</b>
<b>INDEX TO PROBLEMS IN PLANE GEOMETRY . . . . .</b>	<b>287</b>
<b>INDEX TO PROBLEMS IN SOLID GEOMETRY . . . . .</b>	<b>293</b>

## INTRODUCTORY SECTION.

### ON DRAWING INSTRUMENTS AND THE MANNER OF USING THEM, &c.

FOR drawing geometrical figures, the most essential instruments are the *compasses* and the *ruler*.

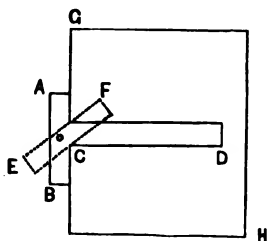
**1. The Compasses.**—These are of various kinds, *e.g.*, we have (1) a pair of *dividers*, having two steel points. These are chiefly used for measuring distances. (2) A pair of *bow-pencil compasses*, having one of its legs furnished with a holder for a pencil. These are used for describing circles. (3) A pair of *bow-pen compasses*, having one of its legs furnished with a mathematical pen. These are used for describing circles in *ink*.

**2. The Ruler.**—These may be of any length, though for the most part they are either 6 inches or a foot. They should have a bevelled edge, and should be divided into inches. They are used for drawing straight lines.

In addition to the foregoing, the student will also require

**3. The Drawing-Board.**—[Its construction is so well known, that any description of it is unnecessary.]

**4. The T Square.**—This instrument consists of two straight



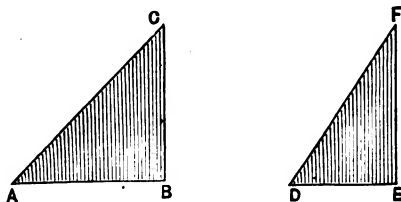
rulers fixed at right angles to each other, as shown in the foregoing diagram. It is used for drawing perpendicular and parallel lines,

the cross piece, stock, or hilt,  $AB$ , being made to slide along the edge of the drawing-board, all straight lines drawn along the edge of the blade,  $CD$ , will be parallel to one another.

NOTE 1. A shifting bevel piece,  $EF$ , with clamping screw, is sometimes attached to the hilt of the square, which enables us to draw parallel lines having any given inclination to the sides of the drawing-board or to the base line of the drawing.

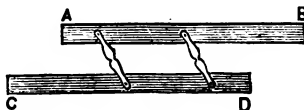
NOTE 2. In the figure,  $GH$  represents a drawing-board.

**5. The Set-Square.**—This is a triangular piece of wood  $ABC$ , having the edge  $BC$  at right angles to  $AB$ . It forms a cheap and convenient instrument for drawing perpendicular or parallel lines



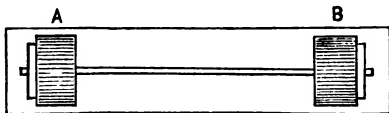
on paper. Set-squares are of two kinds, e.g., we have (1) the set-square of  $45^\circ$ ; having a *right-angle* at  $B$ , and each of the angles at  $A$  and  $C$   $45^\circ$ ; (2) the set-square of  $60^\circ$  having a *right-angle* at  $E$ , an angle of  $60^\circ$  at  $D$ , and hence an angle of  $30^\circ$  at  $F$ . (*Eucl. I. 32.*)

**6. The Parallel Ruler.**—This is a very simple instrument for drawing parallel lines. It consists of two rulers fixed parallel to each other by means of two equal brass links which are fastened to



the rulers at equal distances by pivots. The edge,  $CD$ , of one ruler being placed along a straight line, a pencil mark drawn along the edge,  $AB$ , of the other ruler will trace a parallel straight line.

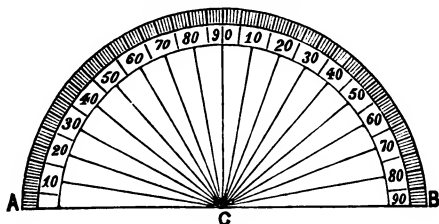
**7. The Rolling Parallel Ruler.**—This instrument consists of a



ruler,  $AB$ , generally divided into inches and tenths; near the

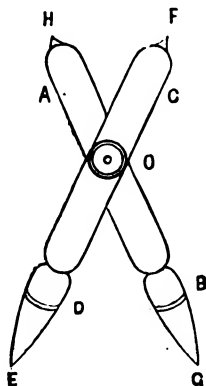
extremities are placed two rollers turning on an axis parallel to the edge  $AB$ , so that the ruler is capable of moving at right angles to the direction of the edge  $AB$ . By the aid of this instrument, any number of lines may be drawn parallel to a given line, and at any given distance from each other.

**8. The Protractor.**—This instrument is used for measuring angles, and for laying down angles on paper of any proposed magnitude. It consists of a brass semicircle,  $ACB$ , the circumference of which is divided into degrees. To lay down any proposed angle, say



60 degrees, draw a line along the edge,  $AB$ ; place a mark coincident with the centre,  $C$ , and another mark coincident with  $60^\circ$ , as figured on the brass circle, then a line drawn on the paper between these two points will give two straight lines inclined to each other at an angle of  $60^\circ$ .

**9. Proportional Compasses.**—This instrument is used for reducing or enlarging a figure in any required proportion. It consists



of two brass legs,  $AB$  and  $CD$ , terminating at both ends with fine steel points,  $E, F, G, H$ . The legs turn on the pivot  $O$ , which may

be adjusted so as to divide the length of the legs from point to point in any proportion. Now, whatever the opening of the compasses may be, the distances  $GE$ , and  $HF$ , between the points will be in the same proportion to each other as the lengths  $OG$  and  $OH$ , into which the legs are divided by the pivot. For example, if  $OG$  be double  $OH$ , then  $GE$  will be double  $HF$ , and the legs so divided would enable us to enlarge a figure to double its size, or to reduce it to half its size.

#### 10. Diagonal Scale.

#### 11. Scale of Chords.

NOTE. For a description of the last two instruments, see pages 182 and 183 respectively.

## HINTS ON THE MANNER OF USING DRAWING INSTRUMENTS.

**1. Pencils.**—For drawing purposes, two of these at least are necessary, viz., the H pencil, and the HHH; one (HHH) for drawing *lines of construction*, the other (H) for the *result lines*. These should not have a needle point, but flattened like a chisel. Great care should be taken in sharpening a pencil, and when it gets short, it should be placed in a crayon-holder.

**2. Compasses.**—These should be always held by the head, otherwise should your fingers touch the sides, the radius might be altered. Great care should also be taken to keep the joints of the compasses *tight*. The extremities of the compasses should also be sharp-pointed, but the paper should be pierced as little as possible by the point which constitutes the centre of the circle. For the *bow-pencil compasses*, “engineers’ pencils” are used.

**3. T Square.**—In making use of this instrument, keep to the *same* edge of the drawing-board, over the *same* drawing; otherwise the drawing will probably be inaccurate. Those T squares which have the hilt passing *over* the blade are in practice the most convenient. A T square should also be tested from time to time.

**4. Set-Squares.**—These are useful instruments for setting off angles of  $45^{\circ}$ ,  $60^{\circ}$ , or  $30^{\circ}$  as required.

**5. Parallel Ruler.**—In using this instrument, it should be held tight, with two or more fingers of the left hand. As its action is imperfect, for drawings where great exactness is required, it would be better to make use of a set-square and a straight-edge.



## GENERAL HINTS ON DRAWING.

THE figures should be first drawn with a black lead pencil. The lines should be as fine as possible, the india-rubber being used sparingly, before the drawing is inked in.

The drawing paper should of course be clean and smooth or hot pressed. Should it be greasy, add a little ox-gall to the ink.

Figures should be drawn on as large a scale as convenient, as the larger the scale, the more correct, generally speaking, is the solution.

Straight lines and arcs should always be drawn sufficiently long at first, as you cannot produce a line, or continue an arc, with such accuracy, if the pencil is taken off the paper, or the point of the compasses is removed from the centre. Both kinds of lines should be smooth, and of uniform thickness.

Lines should be drawn on the surface of the paper, and not indented into it.

When a line is to be drawn parallel to a *short* line, it is better first of all to produce the short line indefinitely both ways, and then proceed.

When several lines pass through *one* point, it is better to commence each line *at* the point which is common to them all.

In inking-in, it is better to take the curve lines before those which are straight.

Intersecting points are best determined when the lines or circles cut one another perpendicularly. The point is not so well determined, when the lines or circles cut one another at very acute or very obtuse angles.

A COURSE OF PROBLEMS  
IN  
PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY.

---

SECTION I.—LINES AND ANGLES.

---

**DEFINITIONS.**

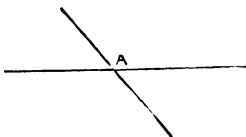
1. A **point** denotes *position* only. It has no magnitude, hence the true mathematical point is merely the *centre* of the dot.  
*Ex. A—*



2. A **line** has length only, and no breadth, so that it merely indicates *direction*. *Ex. AB—*



The ends of lines are points, and when lines cut each other they are said to *intersect*, and the point where they cross each other is called the *point of intersection*. *Ex. A—*



**NOTE.**—Lines are of two kinds—viz., *straight* or *right* lines, and *curved* lines.

3. A **straight line** is the shortest distance between two points. A line is said to be *produced* when it is lengthened at either extremity. *Ex. BC*—



4. A **curved line** is nowhere straight. *Ex. AB*—



NOTE.—The direction of a straight line may be *horizontal*, *vertical*, or *oblique*.

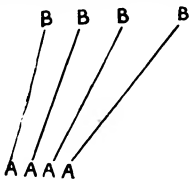
5. A **horizontal line**, as its name implies, is *perfectly level*, like the natural horizon when seen from the midst of the ocean. *Ex. AB*—



6. A **vertical line** is *perfectly upright*, like a plumb-line. *Ex. AB*—

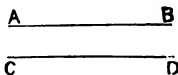


7. An **oblique line** is neither horizontal nor vertical. *Ex. AB*—



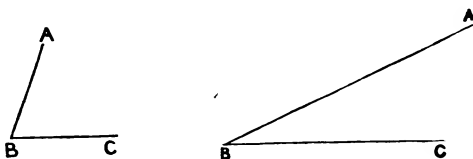
NOTE.—It follows that, while there can be but *one* horizontal line and *one* vertical, the number of oblique lines may be *infinite*.

8. **Parallel lines** are those which are throughout equally distant from each other, and which, therefore, if produced, can never meet. *Ex. AB and CD*—



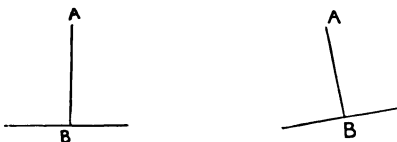
NOTE.—Parallel lines may be *straight* or *curved*.

9. An **angle** is the opening between two straight lines which meet in one point. Its magnitude depends on the *mutual inclination* of the two lines, and not on their lengths. *Ex. ABC—*



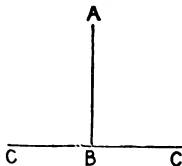
NOTE.—Angles are of three kinds—viz., the *right angle*, the *obtuse angle*, and the *acute angle*.

10. A **perpendicular**. A straight line is said to be perpendicular to another straight line when it stands on it in such a manner that the *adjacent angles* are *equal* to each other. *Ex. AB—*



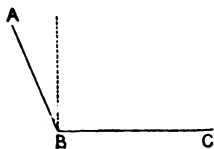
NOTE.—It follows that a perpendicular line is *not* necessarily a vertical line.

11. A **right angle** is the opening between two lines which are perpendicular to each other. *Ex. ABC—*

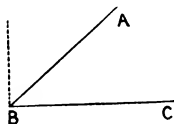


NOTE.—Because the right angle is *invariable* in magnitude, it is made the standard with which all other angles are compared.

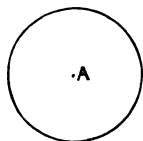
12. An **obtuse angle** is *greater* than a right angle. *Ex. ABC—*



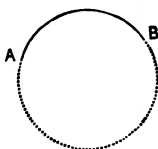
An **acute angle** is *less* than a right angle. *Ex.*  $ABC$ —



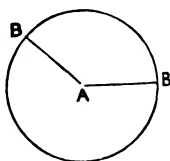
14. A **circle** is a figure contained by one curved line, which is called its *circumference*, and is such that every portion of it is equidistant from a certain point within it called its *centre*. *Ex.*  $A$ —



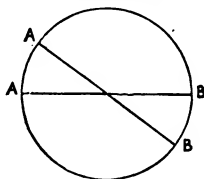
15. An **arc** is any portion of the circumference. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



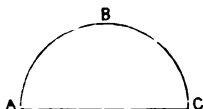
16. A **radius** (plural *radii*) is a straight line drawn from the centre to the circumference. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



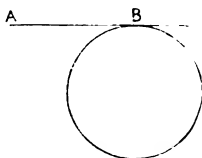
17. A **diameter** is a straight line drawn through the centre, and terminated at both extremities by the circumference. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



18. A **semicircle** is half a circle, and it is contained by a diameter and half the circumference. *Ex. ABC*—



19. A **tangent** is a straight line which meets a circle, and, being produced, does not cut it. *Ex. AB*. The point where it touches the circle is called the *point of contact*. *Ex. B*.

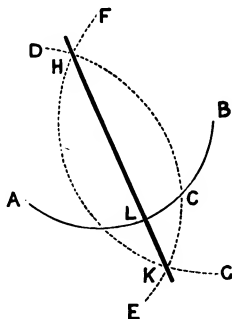
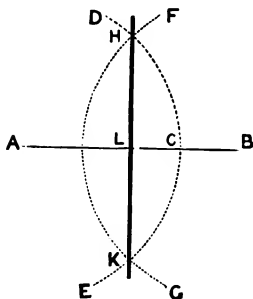


NOTE 1.—The circumference of every circle is supposed to be divided into 360 equal parts, called *degrees*, marked  $^{\circ}$ . Hence, a semicircle will contain  $180^{\circ}$ ; a quarter of a circle, or a *quadrant*,  $90^{\circ}$ ; the sixth part,  $60^{\circ}$ , &c.

NOTE 2.—Angles at the centre of a circle are proportional to the arcs on which they stand. Hence, a quadrant will contain an angle of  $90^{\circ}$ , *i.e.*, a right angle. A degree is divided into 60 equal parts, called *minutes*, marked  $'$ ; and each minute into 60 equal parts, called *seconds*, marked  $"$ . Thus,  $44^{\circ} 30' 27''$  reads—44 *degrees*, 30 *minutes*, 27 *seconds*.

### Problem 1.

To bisect a given straight line  $AB$ , or a given arc  $AB$ ; that is, to divide it into two equal parts.



1. From point  $A$  as centre, with any radius greater than half the line  $AB$ , describe the arc  $DE$ .
2. From point  $B$  as centre, with the same radius, describe the arc  $FG$ , intersecting the arc  $DE$  in  $H$  and  $K$ .
3. Draw the straight line  $HK$ , and the given straight line  $AB$  will be bisected in the point  $L$ .

NOTE 1.— $HK$  is perpendicular to  $AB$ , and at right angles to it.

NOTE 2.—The same method is to be followed in bisecting the given arc  $AB$ .

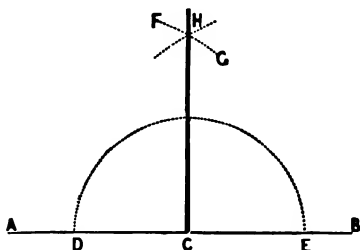
### Problem 2.—(A.)

To draw a straight line perpendicular to a given straight line  $AB$ , from a given point in the line.

**First.** Let the given point  $C$  be at or near the middle of the line  $AB$ .

1. From point  $C$  as centre, with any convenient radius, describe a semicircle meeting  $AB$  in points  $D$  and  $E$ .

2. From point  $D$  as centre, with any radius, describe arc  $FG$ ; and from  $E$  as centre, with the same radius, intersect the arc  $FG$  in the point  $H$ .
3. Draw the straight line  $HC$ , and it will be perpendicular the given straight line  $AB$ .

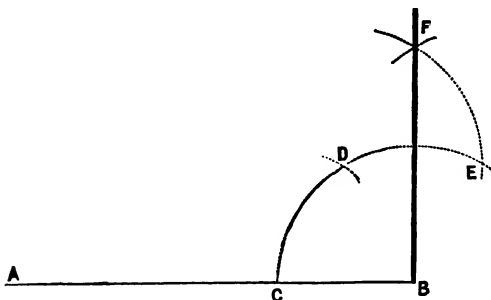


NOTE 1.—Because  $HC$  is perpendicular to  $AB$ , each of the angles  $ACH$ ,  $BCH$  is a right angle.

NOTE 2.—In naming an angle, the *middle* letter should be at the angle.

(B.)

**Secondly.** Let the given point  $B$  be at or near one end of the line  $AB$ .



1. From point  $B$  as centre, with any convenient radius describe an arc  $CDE$ .



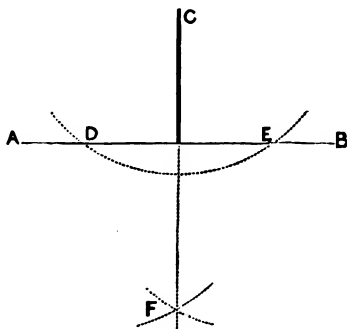
2. From point  $C$ , with the same radius, cut the arc in  $D$ ; from  $D$ , with the same radius, describe an arc  $EF$ , cutting  $CDE$  in  $E$ ; and from  $E$ , with the same radius, cut the arc  $EF$  in  $F$ .
3. Draw the line  $FB$ , and it will be perpendicular to, or at right angles to, the given straight line  $AB$ .

### Problem 3.—(A.)

To draw a straight line **perpendicular** to a given straight line  $AB$ , from a given point outside it.

**First.** Let the given point  $C$  be opposite, or nearly opposite, the **middle** of the line  $AB$ .

1. From point  $C$ , with any sufficient radius, describe an arc cutting  $AB$  in  $D$  and  $E$ .

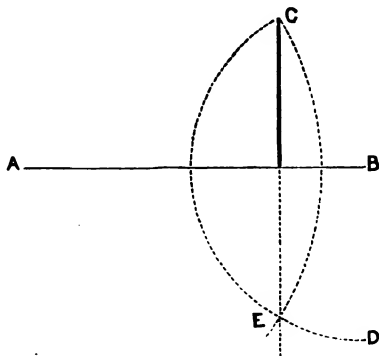


2. From points  $D$  and  $E$  as centres, with any radius, describe arcs cutting each other in the point  $F$ .
3. Draw the line  $CF$ , and it will be perpendicular to the given straight line  $AB$ .

(B.)

**Secondly.** Let the given point  $C$  be opposite, or nearly opposite, one **end** of the line  $AB$ .

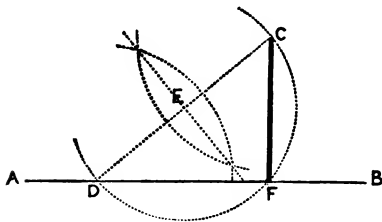
1. From point  $B$  as centre, with radius  $BC$ , describe arc  $CD$ .
2. From point  $A$  as centre, with radius  $AC$ , describe arc  $CE$ .



3. Draw the line  $CE$ , and it will be perpendicular to the given straight line  $AB$ .

### Another Method.

1. Take any point  $D$  in the given line  $AB$  towards  $A$ . Join  $DC$ , and bisect it in  $E$  (**Pr. 1**).

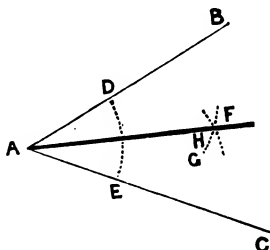


2. From  $E$  as centre, with  $ED$  as radius, describe an arc cutting  $AB$  in  $F$ .
3. Draw the line  $CF$ , and it will be perpendicular to the given straight line  $AB$ .

**Problem 4.**

To bisect a given angle  $BAC$ .

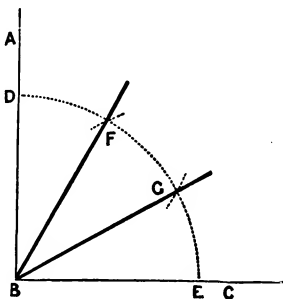
1. From point  $A$  as centre, with any radius, describe an arc  $DE$ .



2. From point  $D$  as centre, with any radius, describe the arc  $FG$ ; and from point  $E$  as centre, with the same radius, intersect the arc  $FG$  in the point  $H$ .
3. Draw the straight line  $AH$ , and it will bisect the given angle  $BAC$ .

**Problem 5.**

To trisect a given right angle  $ABC$ , that is, to divide it into three equal angles.



1. From point  $B$  as centre, with any radius, describe an arc  $DE$ .

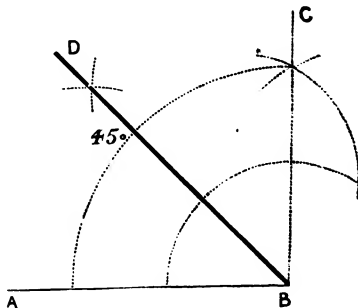
2. From centres  $D$  and  $E$ , with the same radius, cut arc  $DE$  in  $G$  and  $F$ .
3. Draw the straight lines  $BF$  and  $BG$ , and the given right angle  $ABC$  will be trisected, that is, divided into three equal angles.

NOTE.—It is only the *right angle* which (strictly speaking) can be *trisected* by a plane geometrical construction.

### Problem 6.

To construct an angle of  $45^\circ$  at point  $B$  on a given line  $AB$ .

1. At point  $B$ , erect a perpendicular to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**).  $ABC$  will then be a right angle, that is, an angle of  $90^\circ$ .



2. Bisect the right angle  $ABC$  (**Pr. 4**) by the line  $BD$ . Then  $DBA$  is the required angle.

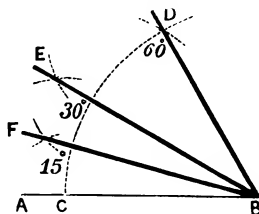
NOTE.—In the same manner, an angle of  $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  may be constructed by bisecting the angle  $DBA$ .

### Problem 7.

To construct an angle of  $60^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ , or  $15^\circ$  at point  $B$  on a given line  $AB$ .

1. With centre  $B$ , and any radius, describe an arc cutting  $AB$  in  $C$ .
2. From centre  $C$ , with the same radius, cut the arc in  $D$ .
3. Draw the line  $DB$ . Then  $DBA$  is the required angle of  $60^\circ$ .

4. Bisect the angle  $DBA$  by the line  $EB$  (Pr. 4). Then  $EBA$  is the required angle of  $30^\circ$ .
5. Bisect the angle  $EBA$  by the line  $FB$  (Pr. 4). Then  $FBA$  is the required angle of  $15^\circ$ .



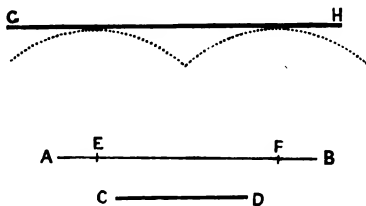
NOTE 1.—In the same manner, an angle of  $7\frac{1}{2}^\circ$  may be constructed by bisecting the angle  $FBA$ .

NOTE 2.—The *radius* of a circle is *one-sixth* of its circumference. It is on this principle that the angle  $DBA$  is  $60^\circ$ .

NOTE 3.—By means of this problem, we might construct *other* angles. Thus, if  $DBA$  be trisected by drawing lines to  $B$ , we obtain an angle of  $20^\circ$ . Bisect that, and we obtain an angle of  $10^\circ$ . Again, if angle  $FBC$  be trisected, by drawing lines to  $B$ , we might obtain an angle of  $5^\circ$ .

### Problem 8.

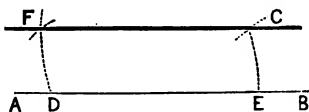
To draw a line **parallel** to a given line  $AB$ , at a given **distance** from it, as  $CD$ .



1. Take *any* two points,  $E$  and  $F$  in the line  $AB$ , and with  $E$  and  $F$  as centres, and radius  $CD$ , describe arcs above the line.
2. Draw the line  $GH$  tangential to, or touching the arcs. Then the line  $GH$  will be parallel to the given line  $AB$ , and at the given distance  $CD$  from it.

### Problem 9.

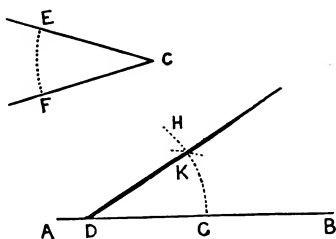
To draw a line **parallel** to a given line  $AB$ , through a given point  $C$ .



1. Take *any* point  $D$  in the given line  $AB$  towards  $A$  as centre ; and from  $D$ , with radius  $DC$ , describe an arc cutting  $AB$  in  $E$ .
2. From  $C$  as centre, with the same radius, describe an arc  $DF$ , and make arc  $DF$  equal to arc  $CE$ .
3. Draw the line  $FC$ , and it will be parallel to the given line  $AB$ .

### Problem 10.

From a given point  $D$ , in the line  $AB$ , to make an angle equal to the given angle  $C$ .

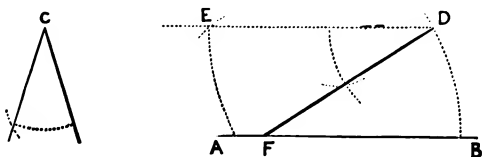


1. From point  $C$  as centre, with any convenient radius, describe an arc  $EF$ .
2. From point  $D$ , with the same radius, describe the arc  $GH$ .
3. From point  $G$ , and the distance  $EF$ , cut off  $GK$  equal to  $EF$ .
4. Draw the line  $DK$ , and the angle  $KDB$  will be equal to the given angle  $C$ .

**Problem 11.**

To draw a line from a given point  $D$ , outside a given line  $AB$ , making with the given line, an angle equal to a given angle  $C$ .

1. From the point  $D$  draw a line  $DE$  parallel to  $AB$  (Pr. 9).

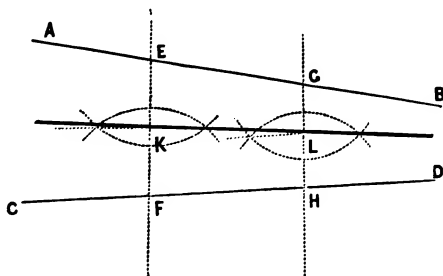


2. At the point  $D$  make an angle  $EDF$  equal to the angle  $C$  (Pr. 10).
3. Produce  $DF$  to meet  $AB$  in  $F$ . Then the angle  $DFB$  will be equal to the angle  $EDF$ , which is equal to the given angle  $C$  (constr.)

NOTE.—We know from Euclid I. 29, that “if a straight line fall upon two parallel straight lines, it makes the alternate angles equal to one another,” hence angle  $EDF$  is equal to angle  $DFB$ .

**Problem 12.**

To bisect the angle made by any two given converging lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , when the angular point is inaccessible.

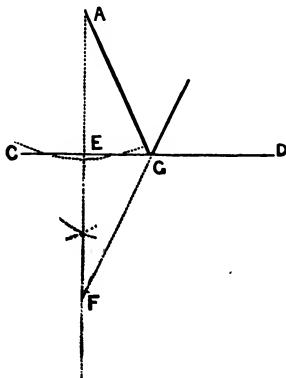


1. Draw any two parallel lines  $EF$  and  $GH$ , across  $AB$  and  $CD$  (Pr. 8).

- 
2. Bisect  $EF$  and  $GH$  in the points  $K$  and  $L$  respectively (Pr. 1).
  3. Draw a line through  $K$  and  $L$ , the points of bisection. *This line, if produced, will bisect the angle made by the produced given lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ .*
- 

### Problem 13.

To draw straight lines from any two given points  $A$  and  $B$ , outside a given straight line  $CD$ , so as to make equal angles with the given line  $CD$ .



1. From  $A$ , let fall a perpendicular  $AE$  on  $CD$  (Pr. 3), and produce it indefinitely towards  $F$ .
  2. Make  $EF$  equal to  $AE$ , and join  $BF$ , cutting  $CD$  in  $G$ .
  3. Draw the line  $AG$ . Then the angles  $AGC$  and  $BGD$  are equal, and  $AG$  and  $BG$  are the required lines.
- 

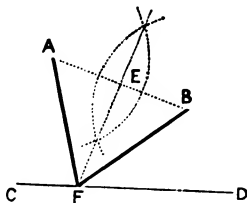
### Problem 14.

To draw straight lines from any two given points  $A$  and  $B$  outside a given straight line  $CD$ , and to meet  $CD$ , so that they may be equal in length.

1. Draw the straight line  $AB$ , and bisect it in  $E$  (Pr. 1).



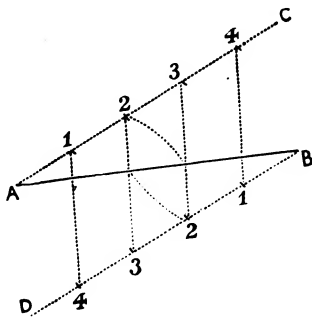
2. Produce the bisecting line to meet  $CD$  in  $F$ .



3. Join  $AF$  and  $BF$ , which will be the two required lines.

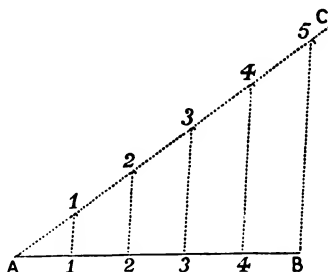
### Problem 15.

To divide a given line  $AB$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case five).



1. Draw a line  $AC$  at any angle with  $AB$ , and draw  $BD$ , making the angle  $ABD$  equal to the angle at  $A$  (Pr. 10).
2. Commencing at  $A$ , mark off on  $AC$  the number of points, less one, that  $AB$  is to be divided into, i.e., set off four equal parts of any length, as 1, 2, 3, 4.
3. From  $B$ , mark off on  $BD$  the same number of equal parts, as 1, 2, 3, 4.
4. Join 1 4, 2 3, 3 2, &c., and the given line  $AB$  will be divided into five equal parts.

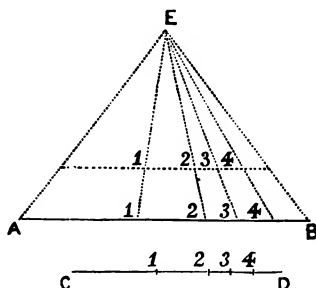
## Another Method.



1. Draw a line  $AC$  of *any* length, and making *any* angle with  $AB$ .
2. From  $A$  mark off *any* five spaces on  $AC$ .
3. From the end of the last equal space, draw a line to  $B$ , as  $5B$ .
4. From the remaining points of division between  $A$  and  $5$ , draw lines to  $AB$ , but parallel to  $5B$ , as  $4$   $4$ ,  $3$   $3$ , &c., then the given straight line  $AB$  will be divided into five equal parts.

## Problem 16.

To divide any line  $AB$  proportionally to a given divided line  $CD$ .

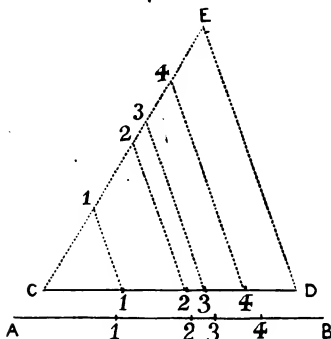


1. Draw a line *similarly* divided to  $CD$ , parallel to  $AB$ , and at *any* distance from it (**Pr. 8**).

B

2. From  $A$  and  $B$ , draw  $AE$  and  $BE$  through the ends of this line to meet in  $E$ .
3. Draw lines from  $E$ , through the points of division, 1, 2, 3, 4, cutting  $AB$  in 1, 2, 3, 4, then  $AB$  is divided proportionally to the given divided line  $CD$ .

### Another Method.



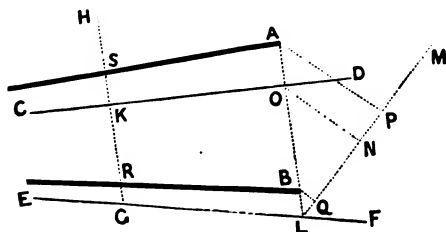
1. Draw  $CE$  equal to  $AB$ , and at any angle with  $CD$ , and join  $ED$ .
2. Draw 4 4, 3 3, &c., parallel to  $ED$ .
3. Transfer the divisions on the line  $CE$  to the given line  $AB$ , and then the divisions on the given line  $AB$  will bear the same proportion to each other that the divisions on  $CE$  bear to each other.

### Problem 17.

To draw lines from any two given points  $A$  and  $B$ , which shall go to the same point to which any two given lines  $CD$  and  $EF$  converge, when the point of convergence is inaccessible.

1. From  $A$ , through  $B$ , draw  $AL$ . From any point  $G$  in the line  $EF$ , draw  $GH$  of unlimited length, parallel to  $AL$  (Pr. 9), cutting  $CD$  in  $K$ .
2. From  $L$ , draw  $LM$  of unlimited length, and at any angle.

3. Mark off  $LN$  equal to  $GK$ . Join  $ON$ , and from  $A$  and  $B$ , draw  $AP$ ,  $BQ$  parallel to  $ON$  (Pr. 9). The divisions  $L, Q, N, P$ , are *proportional* to the divisions  $L, B, O, A$  (Pr. 16).



4. Make  $GR$  equal to  $LQ$ , and  $KS$  equal to  $NP$ . Then the divisions from  $G$  to  $S$  are in the *same proportion* as the divisions from  $L$  to  $A$ . Hence, if we draw the lines  $AS$ ,  $BR$ , they will converge to the same point as the given lines  $CD$ ,  $EF$ .

## SECTION II.—TRIANGLES.

---

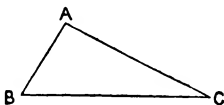
### DEFINITIONS.

(Hitherto we have treated only of LINES and ANGLES.)

1. "A **figure** is that which is inclosed by one or more boundaries" (Euc. I. Def. 14).
2. "Rectilinear figures are those which are contained by straight lines" (Euc. I. Def. 20).

NOTE.—"Two straight lines cannot inclose a space" (Euc. I. Ax. 10). Hence the triangle is the most simple of all rectilinear figures.

3. A **triangle** is a figure which is bounded by three straight lines.  
*Ex. ABC*—

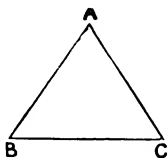


NOTE 1.—It is therefore called a trilateral, or *three-sided* figure.

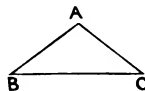
NOTE 2. As every rectilinear figure contains as many angles as sides, it is often named from its angles or *corners*. Hence the term *triangle*.

NOTE 3.—Triangles are of *six* kinds. *Three* of these are named from the comparative lengths of their *sides*, and *three* from the sizes of their *angles*.

4. An **equilateral triangle** is that which has three equal sides.  
*Ex. ABC—*



5. An **isosceles triangle** is that which has only two sides equal.  
*Ex. ABC—*

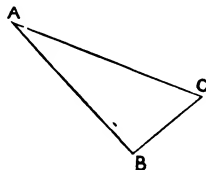
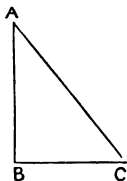


6. A **scalene triangle** is that which has three unequal sides. *Ex. ABC—*



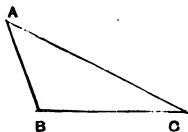
NOTE.—The above terms have reference to the *sides* of the triangle.

7. A **right-angled triangle** is that which has a right angle. *Ex. ABC—*

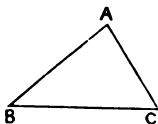


NOTE.—The side which is opposite the right angle (*AC*) is called the *hypotenuse*. The other sides are called the *base*, and *perpendicular*, irrespective of the position of the figure.

8. An **obtuse-angled triangle** is that which has one of its angles an obtuse angle. *Ex. ABC—*



9. An **acute-angled triangle** is that which has three acute angles. *Ex. ABC—*



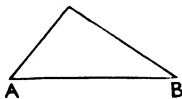
NOTE.—The above terms have reference to the *angles* of the triangle.

10. The **vertex** (plural *vertices*) of a triangle is its *highest* angle. *Ex. A—*

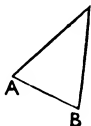


NOTE.—It is also called the *apex*, or the *vertical angle*.

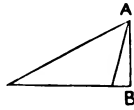
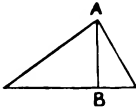
11. The **base** of a triangle is *generally* its *lowest* side. *Ex. AB—*



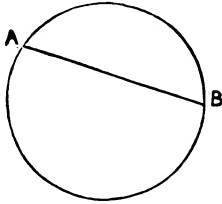
NOTE.—Both in an isosceles triangle and in a right-angled triangle, the position of the base is changed.



12. The **altitude** of a triangle is its perpendicular height, *i.e.*, the length of a perpendicular drawn from the vertex to the base, or to the base produced. *Ex. AB—*

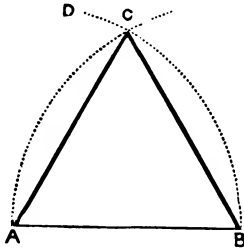


13. The **perimeter** of a figure is its *whole* boundary. Thus, if one side of an equilateral triangle be 5, its perimeter is 15.
14. A **chord** is any straight line drawn across a circle, provided that it does not pass through the centre. *Ex. AB—*



### Problem 18.

To construct an equilateral triangle on a given base **AB**.



1. From centre *A*, with radius *AB*, describe an arc *BD*.

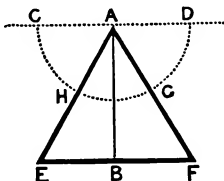


2. From centre  $B$ , with the same radius, cut the arc in  $C$ .
3. Join  $AC$  and  $BC$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required equilateral triangle.

NOTE.—The three straight lines are all equal, since they are radii of equal arcs.

### Problem 19.

To construct an equilateral triangle having a given height  $AB$ —



1. From the extremities of the line  $AB$ , draw  $CAD$  and  $EBF$  perpendicular to it (Pr. 2).
2. From  $A$  as centre with any radius, describe a semicircle cutting  $CAD$  in  $C$  and  $D$ .
3. From  $C$  and  $D$  with the same radius, cut the semicircle in  $G$  and  $H$ .
4. From  $A$  draw lines through  $H$  and  $G$ , meeting  $EF$  in  $E$  and  $F$ . Then  $AEF$  is the equilateral triangle required.

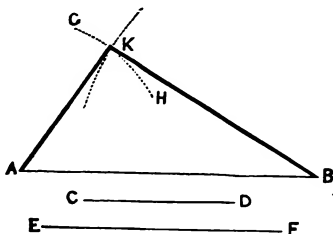
NOTE.—The radius of a circle can be marked off six times round its circumference, hence the arc  $HG$  is  $60^\circ$ . Moreover, the three angles of a triangle, added together, are equal to two right angles, or  $180^\circ$  (Euc. I. 32). Hence, the angle  $HAB$  being  $30^\circ$ , and  $ABE$   $90^\circ$ , the angle  $AEB$  is  $60^\circ$ .

### Problem 20.

To construct a triangle, the three sides  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$  being given.

1. With centre  $A$ , and radius  $CD$ , describe arc  $GH$ .
2. With centre  $B$ , and radius  $EF$ , describe an arc cutting  $GH$  in  $K$ .

3. Draw the straight lines  $AK$ ,  $BK$ , then  $KAB$  is the triangle required.

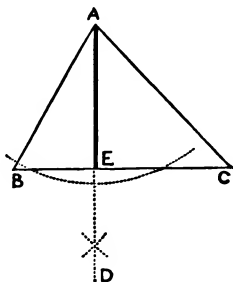


NOTE.—“The greater side of every triangle is opposite to the greater angle” (Euc. I, 18). Hence angle  $AKB$  is greater than the angle  $KAB$ .

### Problem 21.

To find the altitude of a given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. From point  $A$ , let fall the perpendicular  $AD$  (Pr. 3).
2. Line  $AE$  is the required altitude of the given triangle  $ABC$ .

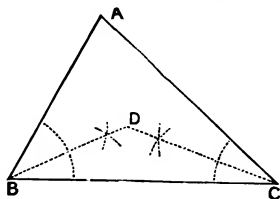


NOTE.—If the line  $AE$  does not fall on the base, the base must be produced, and then we can obtain the altitude of the triangle as above.

**Problem 22.**

To find the centre of a given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Bisect any two of its angles, say, the angles at  $B$  and  $C$  (**Pr. 4**).
2. Produce the bisecting lines, and let them meet in  $D$ .  
Then  $D$  is the centre of the given triangle  $ABC$ .

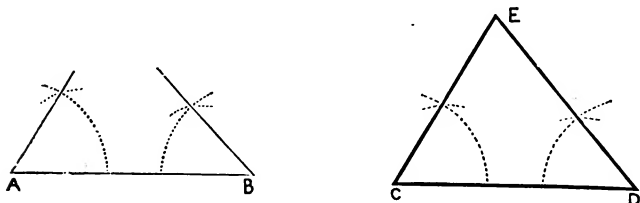


NOTE.—Perpendiculars drawn from  $D$  to the three sides of the triangle are equal in length. They would thus become the radii of a circle which might be inscribed within the triangle (**Euc. IV. 4.**)

**Problem 23.**

To construct a triangle, its base  $AB$  and the angles at the base  $A$  and  $B$  being given.

1. Draw line  $CD$  equal to  $AB$ .

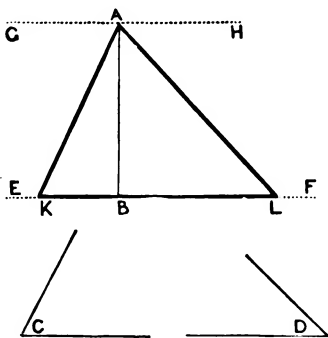


2. Make angle  $C$  equal to angle  $A$ , and angle  $D$  equal to angle  $B$  (**Pr. 10**).
3. Produce the sides until they meet in  $E$ . Then  $CED$  is the required triangle.

### Problem 24.

To construct a triangle, the altitude  $AB$ , and the two angles at the base,  $C$  and  $D$ , being given.

1. Through the point  $B$ , draw  $EF$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (Pr. 2); also through  $A$ , draw  $GH$  perpendicular to  $AB$ .
2. From point  $A$  draw  $AK$ , making the angle  $AKB$  equal to angle  $C$ , by first making angle  $GAK$  equal to  $C$  (Pr. 10).



3. In the same manner, make angle  $ALB$  equal to  $D$ . Then  $AKL$  is the required triangle.

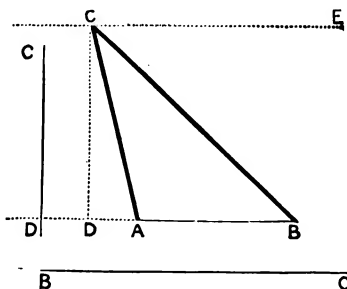
NOTE.—The angles  $GAK$ ,  $AKB$ , are called *alternate angles*, and when a straight line falls upon two parallel straight lines, it makes the alternate angles equal to each other (Euc. I. 29).

### Problem 25.

To construct a triangle, having its base  $AB$ , its altitude  $CD$ , and one side  $BC$  given.

1. Draw a line  $CE$  parallel to  $AB$ , at a distance from it equal to the altitude  $CD$  (Pr. 8).

2. From  $B$ , as centre, with radius  $BC$ , cut  $CE$  in the point  $C$ .

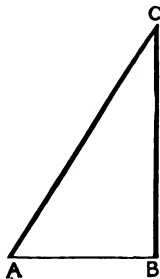


3. Join  $CB$ ,  $CA$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle, and  $CD$  drawn from  $C$  perpendicular to the base  $AB$  produced (**Pr. 3**) is the altitude.

### Problem 26.

To construct a triangle on a given base  $AB$ , having angles of  $60^\circ$ ,  $30^\circ$ , and  $90^\circ$ .

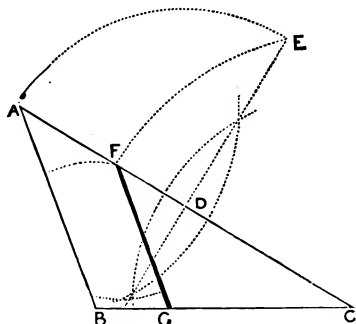
1. At  $B$ , construct a right angle, that is, raise a perpendicular (**Pr. 2**).



2. At  $A$ , make an angle of  $60^\circ$  (**Pr. 7**), and continue the line, until it meets the perpendicular erected at  $B$ , in the point  $C$ . Then  $ABC$  is the required triangle.

**Problem 27.**

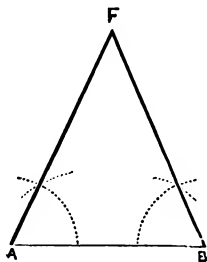
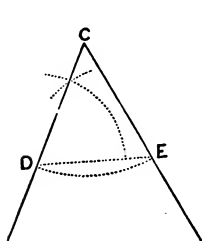
To bisect any given triangle  $ABC$  by a line drawn parallel to one of its sides  $AB$ .



1. Bisect one side as  $AC$  in  $D$  (**Pr. 1**), produce the bisecting line towards  $E$ , and make  $DE$  equal to  $DA$  or  $DC$ .
2. From  $C$ , with radius  $CE$ , describe an arc meeting  $AC$  in  $F$ .
3. From  $F$ , draw a line  $FG$  parallel to  $AB$  (**Pr. 9**), and meeting  $BC$  in  $G$ . Then the given triangle  $ABC$  will be bisected by the line  $FG$ .

**Problem 28.**

To construct an isosceles triangle on a given base  $AB$ , and having a given vertical angle  $C$ .

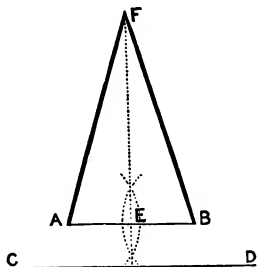


1. From the angular point  $C$  as centre, and with any radius, cut the sides of the angle in  $D$  and  $E$ , and join  $DE$ .

2. At points  $A$  and  $B$ , make angles equal to the angles at  $D$  and  $E$  respectively (Pr. 10).
3. Produce the lines forming the angles to meet in  $F$ , and  $FAB$  will be the required isosceles triangle.

### Problem 29.

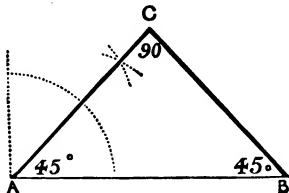
To construct an isosceles triangle having its base  $AB$  and its altitude  $CD$  given.



1. Bisect the base  $AB$  in  $E$  (Pr. 1), and from the point of bisection,  $E$ , mark off the given altitude  $CD$  on the line in the point  $F$ .
2. Join  $FA$  and  $FB$ . Then  $FAB$  is the required isosceles triangle.

### Problem 30.

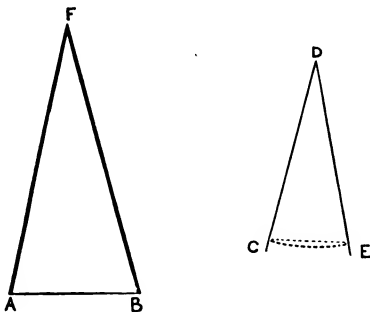
To construct an isosceles triangle on a given base  $AB$ , having a vertical angle of  $90^\circ$ .



1. At point  $A$ , make a right angle (**Pr. 2**), bisect it (**Pr. 6**), thereby making  $BAC$  equal to  $45^\circ$ .
2. At point  $B$ , make an angle  $ABC$  equal to angle  $BAC$  (**Pr. 10**). Then  $ABC$  will be the isosceles triangle required, and having its vertical angle  $ACB$  of  $90^\circ$ .

### Problem 31.

To construct an isosceles triangle on a given base  $AB$ , its vertical angle containing a given required number of degrees (say in this case  $22\frac{1}{2}^\circ$ ).



1. Construct an angle  $CDE$  containing the required number of degrees, viz.  $22\frac{1}{2}$  (**Pr. 6**), and draw a chord to the arc  $CE$ .

At points  $A$  and  $B$  in the given line  $AB$ , construct angles equal to that at  $C$  or  $E$  (**Pr. 10**).

3. Produce the lines completing the angles from  $A$  and  $B$  until they meet in  $F$ . Then  $FAB$  is the required isosceles triangle.

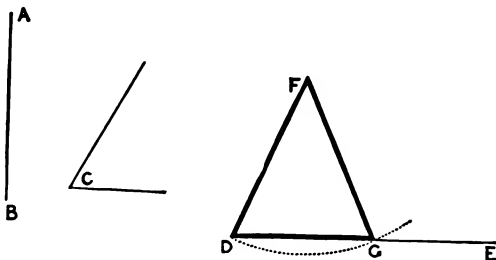
### Problem 32.

To construct an isosceles triangle, one of the equal sides  $AB$ , and one of the equal angles  $C$ , being given.

1. Draw  $DE$  of unlimited length.



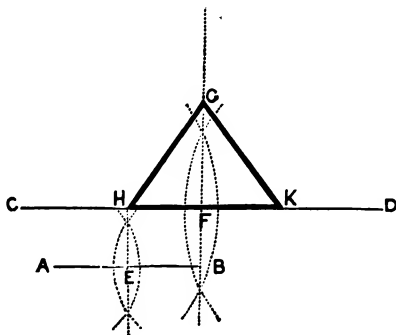
2. Make angle  $EDF$  equal to angle  $C$  (Pr. 10), and make  $DF$  equal to  $AB$ .



3. With centre  $F$ , and radius  $FD$ , describe arc  $DG$ .
4. Join  $FG$ , and  $FDG$  is the required isosceles triangle, having its two sides  $FD$ ,  $FG$  equal to the given line  $AB$ , and its two angles  $D$ ,  $G$ , equal to the given angle  $C$ .

### Problem 33.

To construct an isosceles triangle, having its base  $AB$  and its perimeter  $CD$  given.



1. Bisect  $AB$  and  $CD$  in the points  $E$  and  $F$  (Pr. 1), and produce the bisecting line through  $F$  indefinitely towards  $G$ .

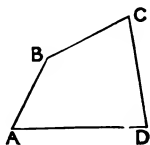
- 
2. From  $F$ , with radius half  $AB$ , that is,  $AE$ , cut the line  $CD$  in points  $H$  and  $K$ .
  3. From  $H$ , with radius  $HC$ , cut  $HG$  in the point  $G$ .
  4. Join  $GH, GK$ . Then  $GHK$  is the isosceles triangle.

SECTION III.

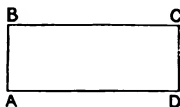
QUADRILATERAL FIGURES.

DEFINITIONS.

1. A **quadrilateral** figure is one which is bounded by four straight lines. *Ex.*  $ABCD$ —

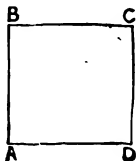


2. A **parallelogram** is a quadrilateral, of which the *opposite* sides are parallel and equal. *Ex.*  $ABCD$ —

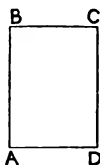


NOTE.—Quadrilaterals fall into *six* classes, *four* of which are *parallelograms*—viz., the *square*, the *rectangle*, the *rhombus*, and the *rhomboid*.

3. A **square** is a parallelogram which has all its sides equal, and all its angles right angles. *Ex.*  $ABCD$ .

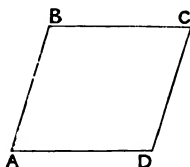


4. A **rectangle** is a parallelogram which has *only* its *opposite* sides equal, but all its angles right angles. *Ex. ABCD—*



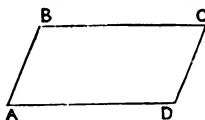
NOTE.—This kind of parallelogram is also termed an *oblong*.

5. A **rhombus** is a parallelogram which has all its sides equal, but its angles are *not* right angles. *Ex. ABCD—*



NOTE.—In each case its *opposite* angles are equal to each other.

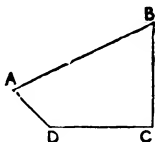
6. A **rhomboid** is a parallelogram which has *only* its *opposite* sides equal, but its angles are *not* right angles. *Ex. ABCD—*



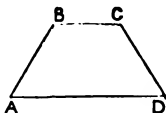
NOTE 1.—As in the preceding figure, its *opposite* angles are equal to each other.

NOTE 2.—The remaining classes of quadrilaterals are the *trapezium* and the *trapezoid*.

7. A **trapezium** is a quadrilateral which has *none* of its sides *parallel*. *Ex. ABCD—*



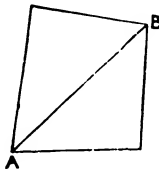
8. A **trapezoid** is a quadrilateral which has only *two* of its sides parallel. *Ex.*  $ABCD$ —



NOTE 1.—Some of its sides and angles *may* be equal.

NOTE 2.—*All* quadrilateral figures are also called *quadrangles*, as they have also four angles.

9. A **diagonal** of a quadrilateral is a straight line which joins *any* two of its opposite angles. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



10. A **diameter** is a straight line drawn through its centre *parallel* to two of its sides. *Ex.*  $AB$ —

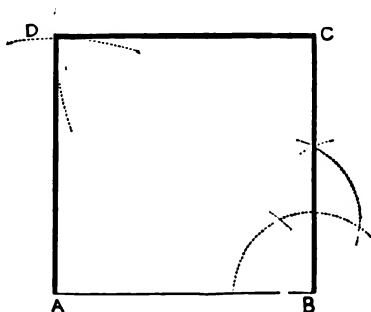


### Problem 34.

To construct a **square** on a given base  $AB$ —

1. At  $B$  in the given line  $AB$  erect a perpendicular  $BC$  equal to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**).
2. From the point  $A$ , with radius  $AB$ , describe an arc above  $A$ .

3. From  $C$ , with the same radius, cut the arc in  $D$ .

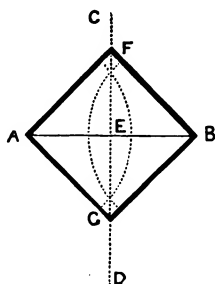


4. Join  $AD$  and  $CD$ . Then  $ABCD$  is the square required.

### Problem 35.

To construct a square, the diagonal  $AB$  being given.

1. Bisect  $AB$  by the perpendicular  $CD$  (Pr. 1).

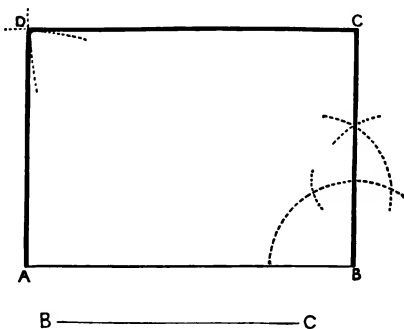


2. Cut off  $EF$ , and  $EG$ , equal to  $EA$  or  $EB$ .
3. Join  $AF$ ,  $FB$ ,  $BG$ ,  $GA$ . Then  $AFBG$  is the square required, having the given diagonal  $AB$ .

### Problem 36.

To construct a **rectangle**, the lengths of two of the **sides**  $AB$  and  $BC$  being given.

1. From the point  $B$  in the given line  $AB$ , erect  $BC$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**), and equal to the given line  $BC$ .

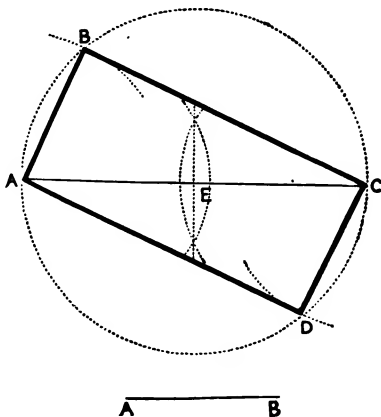


2. From  $A$ , with radius  $BC$ , describe an arc above  $A$ .
3. From  $C$ , with radius  $AB$ , cut the arc in the point  $D$ .
4. Join  $AD$  and  $CD$ . Then  $ABCD$  is the required rectangle.

### Problem 37.

To construct a **rectangle**, one side  $AB$  and its **diagonal**  $AC$  being given.

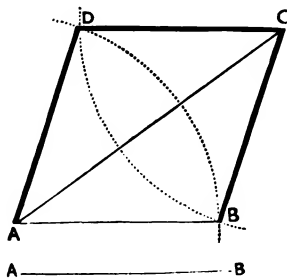
1. Bisect the diagonal  $AC$  in  $E$  (**Pr. 1**), and from  $E$  as centre, with the radius  $EA$  or  $EC$ , describe a circle.
2. From  $A$  and  $C$  as centres, with the given line  $AB$  as radius, describe arcs  $B$  and  $D$ .
3. Join  $AB$ ,  $BC$ ,  $CD$ , and  $DA$ . Then  $ABCD$  is the rectangle required.



NOTE.—Angle  $ABC$  is a *right angle*, and the lines drawn from  $A$  and  $C$  to *any* point in the arc of the semicircle would form a right angle (Euc. III., 31).

### Problem 38.

To construct a rhombus, its side  $AB$  and one diagonal  $AC$  being given.

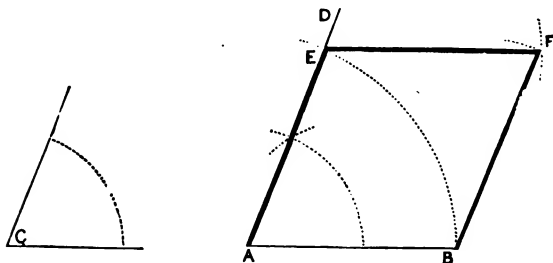


1. With centres  $A$  and  $C$ , and radius  $AB$ , describe arcs cutting at  $D$  and  $B$ .
2. Join  $AD$ ,  $DC$ ,  $CB$ , and  $BA$ . Then  $ADCB$  is the rhombus required.



### Problem 39.

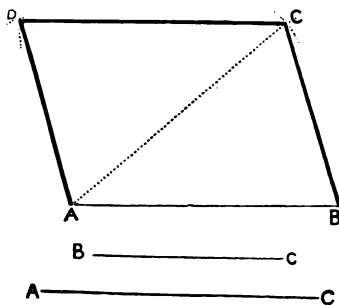
To construct a rhombus, its side  $AB$  and an angle  $C$  being given.



1. Make angle  $BAD$  equal to  $C$  (Pr. 10), and cut off  $AE$  equal to  $AB$ .
2. With centres  $E$  and  $B$ , and radius  $AB$ , describe arcs intersecting in the point  $F$ .
3. Join  $EF, FB$ . Then  $AEFB$  is the required rhombus.

### Problem 40.

To construct a rhomboid, its two adjacent sides  $AB$  and  $BC$ , and a diagonal  $AC$ , being given.



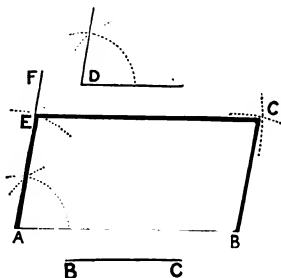
1. From  $A$  in  $AB$ , with the diagonal  $AC$  as radius, describe an arc.

2. From  $B$ , with radius  $BC$ , cut the arc in  $C$ .
3. From  $C$ , with  $AB$  as radius, describe an arc.
4. From  $A$ , with radius  $BC$ , cut the arc in  $D$ .
5. Join  $BC$ ,  $CD$ , and  $DA$ . Then  $ABCD$  is the rhomboid required.

### Problem 41.

To construct a rhomboid, its two adjacent sides  $AB$  and  $BC$ , and angle  $D$  being given.

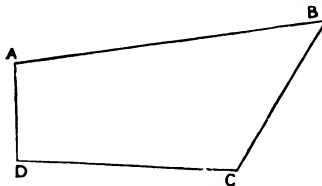
1. At  $A$  in  $AB$  make the angle  $BAF$  equal to the given angle  $D$  (Pr. 10), and cut off  $AE$  equal to  $BC$ .



2. From  $B$ , with radius  $BC$ , describe an arc above  $B$ .
3. From  $E$  as centre, with radius  $AB$ , cut the arc in  $C$ .
4. Join  $EC$  and  $CB$ . Then  $AECB$  is the required rhomboid.

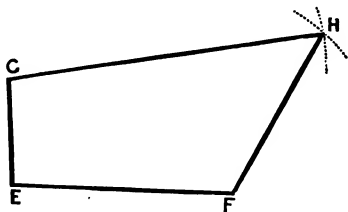
### Problem 42.

To construct a trapezium equal to a given trapezium  $ABCD$ .



1. Make line  $EF$  equal to  $CD$ , and the angle at  $E$  equal to the angle at  $D$  (Pr. 10).

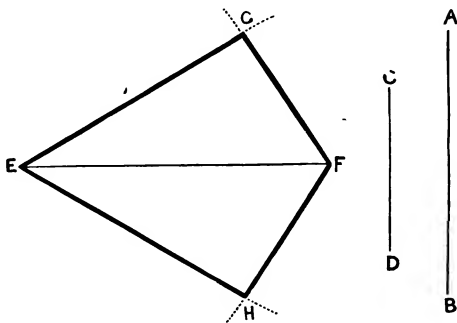
2. Make the side  $EG$  equal to  $AD$ .



3. From the point  $G$ , with radius  $AB$ , and from  $F$ , with radius  $BC$ , describe arcs cutting in  $H$ .
4. Join  $GH$ ,  $FH$ . Then the trapezium  $EFGH$  shall be equal to the given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 43.

To construct a trapezium, having its adjacent pairs of sides equal respectively to two given lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , and its diagonal equal to the given line  $EF$ .

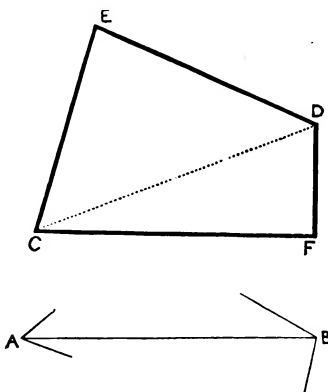


1. From centre  $E$ , with  $AB$  radius, and from centre  $F$ , with  $CD$  radius, describe arcs cutting in  $G$  and  $H$ .
2. Join  $EG$ ,  $GF$ ,  $FH$ , and  $HE$ . Then  $EGFH$  is the required trapezium.

**Problem 44.**

To construct a trapezium when the length of the diagonal  $AB$ , and the angles at its extremities  $A$  and  $B$  are given.

1. Make any straight line  $CD$  equal to the diagonal  $AB$ .



2. Make angles at  $C$  equal and correspondent to the angles at  $A$  ; and angles at  $D$  equal and correspondent to the angles at  $B$  (**Pr. 10**).
3. Produce their sides until they meet. Then the figure  $CEDF$  is the required trapezium.

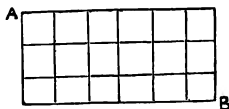
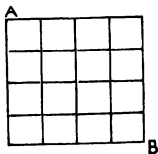
SECTION IV.—CIRCLES, TANGENTS,  
AND ARCS.

---

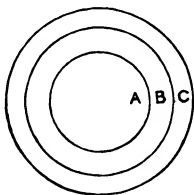
**DEFINITIONS.**

1. The **area** of a figure is its *superficies* or *surface*. Such measurements are calculated by square or superficial measure. Thus

(a) A *square* whose side is 4 linear inches, contains an area of 16 square inches. *Ex. AB—*



(b) A *rectangle* whose adjacent sides are 6 and 3 linear feet, contains an area of 18 square feet. *Ex. AB—*

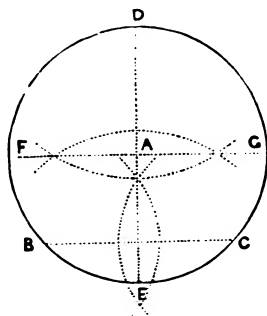


2. **Concentric circles.** Circles are said to be *concentric* when they have a *common* centre. *Ex. A, B, C—*

**Problem 45.**

To find the centre of a given circle *A*.

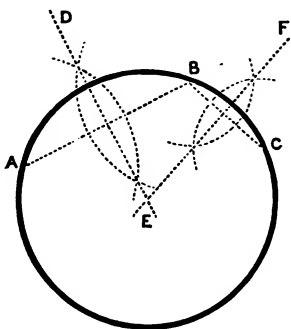
1. Draw any chord *BC*, and bisect it by a line meeting the circumference in *D* and *E* (Pr. 1).



2. Bisect *ED* by the line *FG*. The point of intersection, *A*, is the centre of the given circle.

**Problem 46.**

To describe a circle which shall pass through three given points *A*, *B*, and *C*.



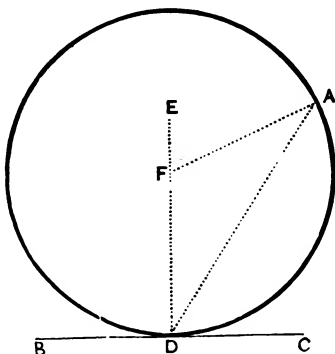
1. Join *AB*, and bisect it by the perpendicular *DE* (Pr. 1.)

2. Join  $BC$ , and bisect it by the perpendicular  $FE$ , intersecting  $DE$  in  $E$ .
3. With centre  $E$ , and radius  $EA$ , describe the required circle, and it will pass through the three given points  $A, B, C$ .

### Problem 47.

To describe a circle which shall pass through any given point  $A$ , and which shall also be tangential to the given line  $BC$ , in a given point  $D$ .

1. Draw  $DE$  at right angles to  $BC$  (Pr. 2).



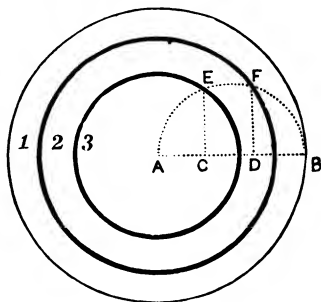
2. Join  $AD$ , and make the angle  $DAF$  equal to the angle  $ADE$  (Pr. 10).
3. Then with centre  $F$ , and radius  $FD$ , describe the required circle, which will pass through the given point  $A$ , and be tangential to the given line  $BC$ , at the given point  $D$ .

### Problem 48.

To divide the area of a given circle  $A$  into any number of equal parts by concentric circles (say three in this case).

1. Draw any radius  $AB$ , and divide it into three equal parts in the points  $C, D$  (Pr. 15).

2. On  $AB$  describe a semi-circle, and from the points of division  $C$  and  $D$ , erect perpendiculars to  $AB$  (Pr. 2), meeting the semicircle in  $E$  and  $F$ .

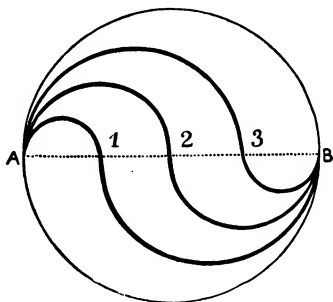


3. From  $A$  as centre, with  $AE$  and  $AF$  as radii, describe circles. Then the areas 1, 2, 3, contained between these circles, will be equal.

### Problem 49.

To divide a given circle into any number of parts, which shall be equal both in area and outline.

1. Draw any diameter  $AB$ , and divide it into the required number of parts (say four) (Pr. 15) in the points 1, 2, 3.



2. Bisect  $A1$ , and describe a semicircle on it, and a similar one below  $3B$ .

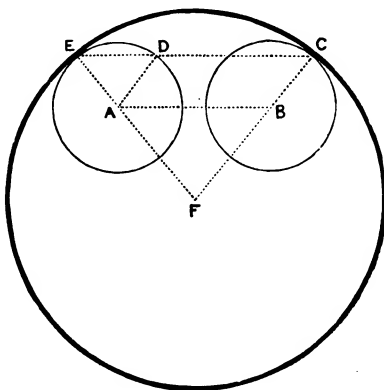


3. Bisect 1B, the remaining part of the line  $AB$ , and describe a semicircle *below* the line, and *with the same radius* a similar one on the line  $A3$ .
4. With points 1 and 3 as centres, describe semicircles on the line  $A2$  and *below*  $2B$  respectively. Then the given circle will be divided into the required four parts which are equal both in area and outline.

### Problem 50.

To describe a circle touching two given circles  $A$  and  $B$ , and one of them in a given point  $C$ .

1. Join the centres of the two circles  $A$  and  $B$  by the straight line  $AB$ .
2. Draw from  $C$ , the given point of contact, a radius,  $CB$ .

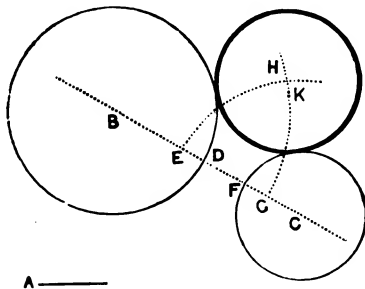


3. In the other circle, draw a radius  $AD$ , parallel to  $BC$  (Pr 8).
4. Join  $CD$ , producing it if necessary to a point opposite to  $C$ , as  $E$ .
5. Join  $CB$  and  $EA$ , and produce them until they meet in  $F$ . Then  $FC$  or  $FE$  will be the radius of the required circumscribing circle.

**Problem 51.**

To describe a circle of a given radius  $A$ , touching any two given circles  $B$  and  $C$ , tangentially.

1. Draw a line of *indefinite* length through  $B$  and  $C$ .
2. Make  $DG$  and  $FE$  each equal to  $A$ .



3. With  $B$  as centre, and radius  $BG$ , describe the arc  $GH$ .
4. With  $C$  as centre, and radius  $CE$ , describe arc  $EK$ .  
With  $K$  as centre, and radius  $A$ , describe the required circle, which shall be tangential to the given circles  $B$  and  $C$ .

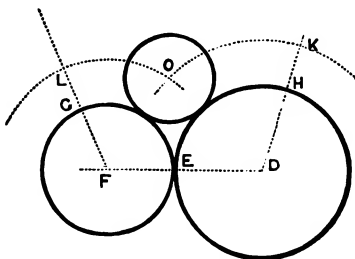
**Problem 52.**

To describe three circles having any given radii  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , each circle being tangential to the other two.

1. Take any point  $D$  as centre, and with line  $A$  as radius, describe a circle, and produce the radius  $DE$  outwards indefinitely.
2. From  $E$ , with line  $B$  as radius, cut  $DE$  produced in  $F$ ; and from  $F$ , with the same radius, describe the second circle.
3. Draw any other radius to each circle as  $DH$ ,  $FG$ , and produce them.

D

4. On the produced radii, set off  $HK$ , and  $GL$ , equal to  $C$ .



A \_\_\_\_\_

B \_\_\_\_\_

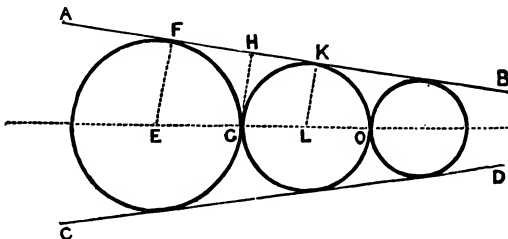
C \_\_\_\_\_

5. From points  $D$  and  $F$ , with  $DK$  and  $FL$  as radii respectively, describe arcs cutting each other in  $O$ .
6. From  $O$  as centre, with line  $C$  as radius, describe the remaining circle. Then  $F$ ,  $D$ ,  $O$  shall be the three required circles.

### Problem 53.

To describe a series of circles in succession, tangential to two given converging lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

1. Bisect the angle made by the two given converging lines (Pr. 12), and take any point  $E$  in the line of bisection.



2. From  $E$ , draw a perpendicular  $EF$  to one of the given lines  $AB$  (Pr. 3).

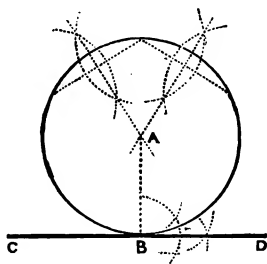
3. Then  $E$  is the centre, and  $EF$  the radius of the first circle, which cuts the line of bisection in  $G$ .
4. From  $G$ , draw a line perpendicular to  $EG$  (Pr. 2), meeting  $AB$  in  $H$ .
5. From  $H$ , set off  $HK$  equal to  $HF$ , and draw a line from  $K$ , perpendicular to  $AB$ , or parallel to  $EF$  (Pr. 8), meeting the line of bisection in  $L$ .
6. Then  $L$  is the centre, and  $LK$  or  $LG$  the radius of the second circle, which cuts the line of bisection in  $O$ .

NOTE.—By the same construction other circles may be described either towards  $A$ ,  $C$ , or  $B$ ,  $D$ .

### Problem 54.

To draw a **tangent** to a given circle  $A$  at a given point of contact  $B$  in the circumference.

1. Find the centre of the circle  $A$  (Pr. 45), and from  $B$  draw a radius  $BA$ .

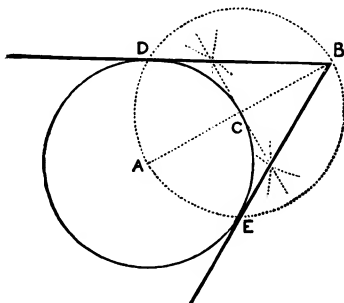


2. From  $B$  draw a line perpendicular to  $AB$  (Pr. 2), and produce it both ways towards  $C$  and  $D$ . Then  $CD$  is the required tangent to the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 55.

To draw a **tangent** to a given circle  $A$ , from a given point  $B$  outside the circumference.

1. Find the centre of the circle  $A$  (Pr. 45), and draw a line from  $B$  to the centre  $A$ .

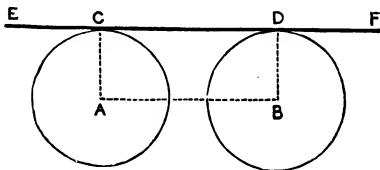


2. Bisect  $AB$  in the point  $C$  (Pr. 1), and describe the circle of which  $AB$  is the diameter, and cutting the given circle in the required points of contact  $D$  and  $E$ .
3. Join  $BD$  or  $BE$ , and either of these lines produced beyond  $D$  or  $E$  is the required tangent to the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 56.

To draw a tangent on the outside of two given equal circles  $A$  and  $B$ , placed apart.

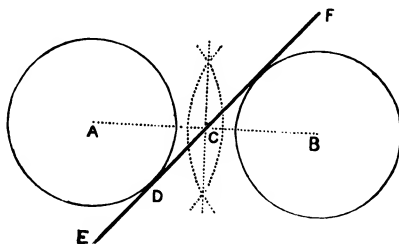
1. Join the centres  $A$  and  $B$  of the given circles.



2. At  $A$  and  $B$ , draw lines  $AC$ ,  $BD$  at right angles to  $AB$ , meeting the circumferences in  $C$  and  $D$  (Pr. 2), the points of contact.
3. Draw the required tangent  $EF$  through the points  $C$  and  $D$ .

**Problem 57.**

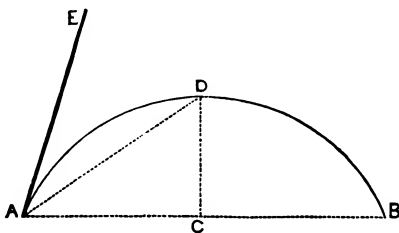
*To draw a tangent between two given equal circles  $A$  and  $B$ , placed apart.*



1. Join the centres  $A$  and  $B$  of the given circles.
2. Bisect the line  $AB$  (Pr. 1) in the point  $C$ ; and from  $C$ , draw a tangent to the circle  $A$  (Pr. 55) one point of contact being at  $D$ .
3. Produce the line  $CD$  both ways to  $E$  and  $F$ . Then  $EF$  will be the required tangent.

**Problem 58.**

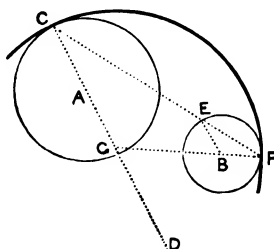
*To draw a tangent to any given point of contact  $A$ , in the given arc of a circle  $AB$ , when the centre cannot be obtained.*



1. Draw the chord  $AB$ , and bisect it in  $C$  (Pr. 1).
2. From the point  $C$ , erect a perpendicular  $CD$  to  $AB$  (Pr. 2).
3. Join  $DA$ , and make the angle  $DAE$  equal to the angle  $DAC$  (Pr. 10).
4. Produce  $AE$ , and it is the required tangent.

### Problem 59.

To draw a **tangential arc** to two given circles *A* and *B*, touching one of the given circles in any given point *C*.



1. From *C*, through centre *A*, draw *CD* of unlimited length.
2. From centre *B*, draw *BE* parallel to *CD* (Pr. 8).
3. From *C*, through *E*, draw *CF*; and from *F*, through *B*, draw *FG*.
4. With *G* as centre, and *GC* as radius, describe the required tangential arc. Then the arc *CF* shall be tangential to the two given circles *A* and *B*.

### Problem 60.

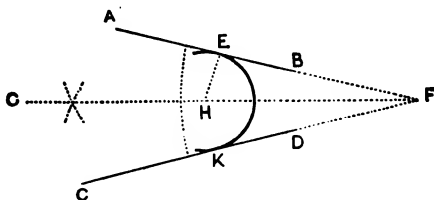
To find a point which would be situated in the continuation of a given arc *ABC*, when the centre of the arc cannot be obtained.



1. Draw any two chords *AB*, *BC*.
2. Make the angle *BCD* equal to the angle *ABC* (Pr. 10.)
3. Cut off *CE* equal to *AB*; then point *E* would be in the continuation of the given arc *ABC*.

**Problem 61.**

To describe the **arc** of a circle, which shall be **tangential** to any two given **converging lines**  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and which shall touch one of the given lines at a given point  $E$ .



1. Produce the converging lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , until they meet in point  $F$ , and bisect the angle  $AFC$  by the line  $FG$  (**Pr. 4**).
2. From  $E$ , draw  $EH$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**).
3. With  $H$  as centre, and  $HE$  as radius, describe the required arc. Then the arc  $EK$  shall be tangential to the two given converging lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ .



## SECTION V.—POLYGONS.

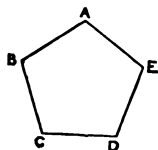
### DEFINITIONS.

(In the construction of rectilinear figures, we have hitherto treated of only TRILATERAL and QUADRILATERAL figures. Sections II. and III.)

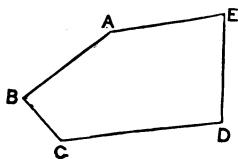
1. "Multilateral figures, or **polygons**, are those which are contained by more than four straight lines" (Euc. I, Def. 23).

NOTE.—A polygon is either *regular* or *irregular*.

2. A **regular polygon** is one that has all its sides and all its angles equal. *Ex. ABCDE*—



3. An **irregular polygon** is one that has its sides and angles unequal. *Ex. ABCDE*—



NOTE.—A polygon may have *any* number of sides, but in *Practical Geometry* we seldom have to deal with figures having more than twelve sides.

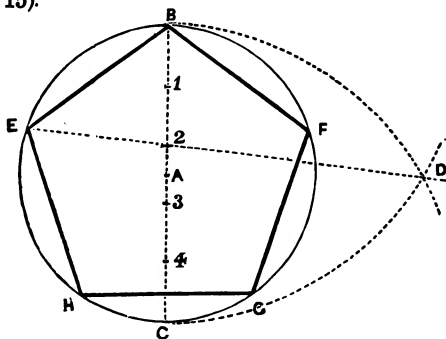
4. A pentagon	is a polygon having 5 sides.
A hexagon	” ” 6 ”
A heptagon	” ” 7 ”
An octagon	” ” 8 ”
A nonagon	” ” 9 ”
A decagon	” ” 10 ”
An un-decagon	” ” 11 ”
A do-decagon	” ” 12 ”

### Problem 62--(A.)

To inscribe any regular polygon (say a pentagon) in a given circle *A*.

#### General Method.

1. Draw a diameter *BC*, and divide it into as many equal parts as the polygon is to have sides (in this case five. Pr. 15).



2. With points *B* and *C* as centres, and the diameter *BC* as radius, describe arcs cutting at *D*.
3. From *D*, draw a line through point 2 to *E*. Join *EB*, which is one of the sides of the required polygon.
4. With *EB* as radius, starting from *B*, cut the circle in the points *F*, *G*, *H* successively.
5. Join *BF*, *FG*, *GH*, and *HE* by straight lines, and a regular pentagon will be inscribed within a given circle *A*.

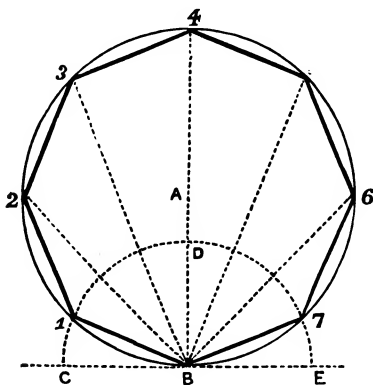
NOTE.—Whatever number of sides the polygon may have, the line from *D* must always be drawn through the second division of the diameter.

## (B.)

To inscribe any regular polygon (say an octagon) in a given circle *A*.

**Another General Method.**

1. Draw *any* radius *AB*, and at *B* draw a tangent to the circle (**Pr. 54**).
2. From *B*, with *any* radius, describe a semicircle *CDE*, and divide it into as many parts as the polygon is to have sides.



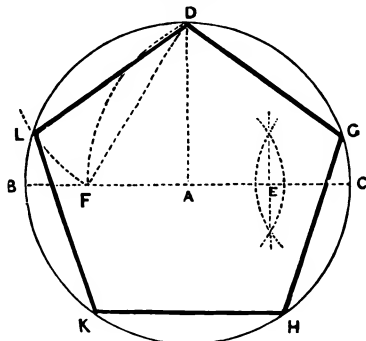
3. Draw lines from *B* through each point of division; produce them, and they will cut the circle in the place of the angles of the polygon.
4. Join the points *B* 1, 1 2, 2 3, &c., and a regular octagon will be inscribed in the given circle *A*.

**Problem 63.**

To inscribe a regular pentagon within a given circle *A*.

1. Draw a diameter *BC*, and from the centre *A* erect a perpendicular *AD* (**Pr. 2**).
2. Bisect the radius *AC* in *E* (**Pr. 1**).

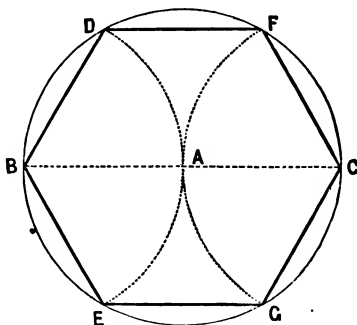
3. From  $E$  as centre, with radius  $ED$ , describe an arc  $DF$ , cutting the diameter in  $F$ .
4. Draw the chord of the arc  $DF$ . This will be the length of a side of the pentagon.



5. With  $DF$  as radius starting from  $D$ , cut the circle in the points  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ , and  $L$  successively.
6. Join  $DG$ ,  $GH$ , &c., by straight lines, and a regular pentagon will be inscribed within a given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 64.

To inscribe a regular hexagon within a given circle  $A$ .



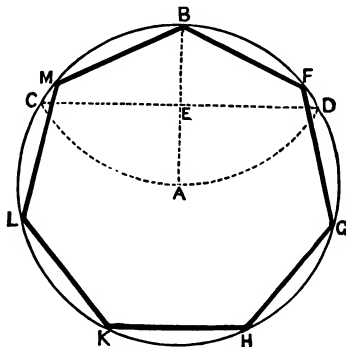
1. Draw any diameter  $BC$ .

2. With  $B$  and  $C$  as centres, and the radius of the circle  $AB$ , describe the arcs  $DAE$  and  $FAG$ .
3. Join  $BD$ ,  $DF$ , &c., and the required regular hexagon is inscribed in the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 65.

To inscribe a regular heptagon within a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw any radius  $AB$ , and from  $B$ , with  $BA$  as radius, describe an arc  $CAD$  cutting the circumference in points  $C$  and  $D$ .



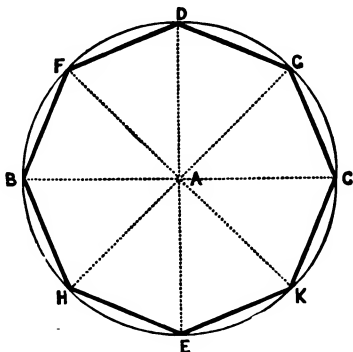
2. Join  $CD$  by a straight line cutting  $AB$  in  $E$ . Then  $EC$  or  $ED$  will be the length of a side of the heptagon.
3. With  $EC$  or  $ED$  as radius, starting from  $B$ , cut the circle in the points  $F$ ,  $G$ , . . .  $M$  successively.
4. Join  $BF$ ,  $FG$ , &c., by straight lines, and a regular heptagon will be inscribed within a given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 66.

To inscribe a regular octagon within a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw any diameter  $BC$ , and bisect it by another diameter  $DE$ .

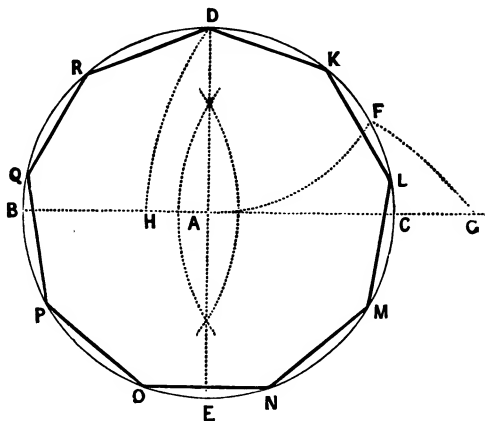
2. Bisect each of the four arcs by the diameters  $FK$ .  $HG$ .



3. Join the points  $BF$ ,  $FD$ , &c., by straight lines, and the required regular octagon is inscribed in the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 67.

To inscribe a regular nonagon within a given circle  $A$ .



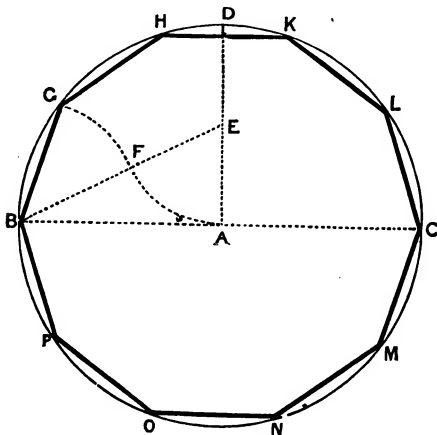
1. Draw a diameter  $BC$ , and produce it one way indefinitely (say to the right), and bisect  $BC$  by another diameter  $DE$ .

2. From  $D$ , with radius  $DA$ , describe an arc cutting the arc  $DC$  in  $F$ .
3. From  $E$ , with radius  $EF$ , cut the produced diameter  $BC$  in  $G$ .
4. From  $G$ , with radius  $GD$ , cut the diameter  $BC$  in  $H$ .
5. With  $BH$ , which is equal to a side of the nonagon, cut the circle, starting from  $D$ , in the points  $K, L, \dots, R$ . Join these points by straight lines, and the required regular nonagon is inscribed in the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 68.

To inscribe a regular **decagon** within a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw any diameter  $BC$ , and a radius  $AD$  perpendicular to it from the centre of the circle (**Pr. 2**).



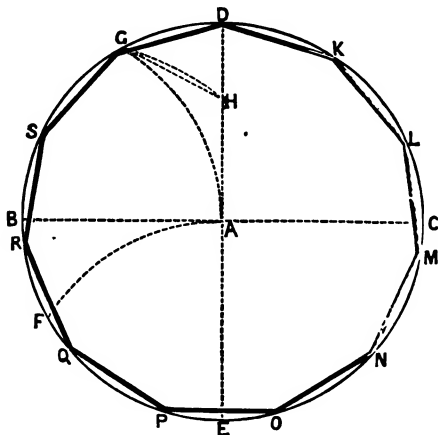
2. Bisect  $AD$  in  $E$  (**Pr. 1**), and join  $BE$ .
3. From  $E$ , with  $EA$  as radius, describe an arc cutting  $BE$  in  $F$ .
4. From  $B$ , with  $BF$  as radius, describe an arc cutting the circumference in  $G$ .
5. Draw the straight line  $BG$ . It will be a side of the decagon.

6. *With the straight line  $BG$  as radius, starting from  $G$ , cut the circle in the points  $H, K \dots P$  successively.*
7. *Join  $GH, HK, \&c.$ , by straight lines, and a *regular decagon* will be inscribed within a given circle  $A$ .*

### Problem 69.

*To inscribe a regular un-decagon within a given circle  $A$ .*

1. *Draw two diameters  $BC$  and  $DE$  perpendicular to each other, and cutting each other in  $A$ .*



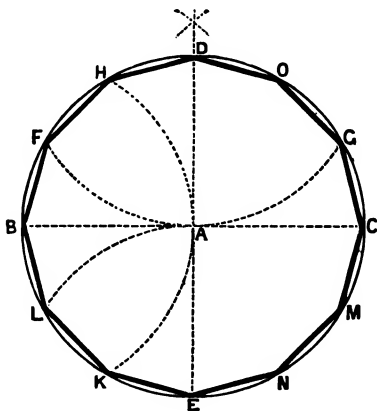
2. *From  $E$ , with radius  $EA$ , describe an arc, cutting the quadrant  $EB$  in  $F$ .*
3. *From  $B$ , with the same radius, describe an arc, cutting the quadrant  $BD$  in  $G$ .*
4. *From  $F$ , with radius  $FG$ , describe an arc, cutting the radius  $AD$  in  $H$ .*
5. *Draw the straight line  $GH$ , it will be equal to a side of the un-decagon.*
6. *With the straight line  $GH$  as radius, starting from  $D$ , cut the circle in the points  $K, L, \dots G$  successively.*
7. *Join  $DK, KL, \&c.$ , by straight lines, and a *regular un-decagon* will be inscribed within a given circle  $A$ .*



**Problem 70.**

*To inscribe a regular do-decagon within a given circle  $A$ .*

1. Draw *any* two diameters  $BC$  and  $DE$  at right angles to each other.



2. With centres  $D$ ,  $B$ ,  $E$ , and  $C$ , and the radius of the circle  $AB$ , describe arcs cutting the circumference in  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ , and  $O$ .
3. Join  $DO$ ,  $OG$ , &c., by straight lines, and a regular do-decagon will be inscribed within a given circle  $A$ .

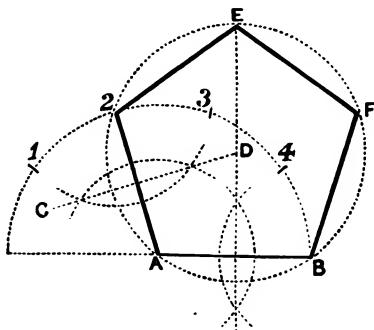
**Problem 71—(A.)**

*To construct any regular polygon (say a pentagon) on a given straight line  $AB$ .*

**General Method.**

1. Produce the side  $AB$ , in this case, say towards the left. With  $A$  as centre and  $AB$  as radius, describe the semicircle.
2. Divide the semicircle into as many equal parts as the polygon is to have sides (five).

3. From  $A$  draw  $A 2$ , to the *second* division of the semicircle. This makes another side of the required figure.



4. Bisect the two sides  $2 A$ ,  $A B$ , by lines  $C D$ ,  $D E$ , and from centre  $D$ , their point of intersection, and radius  $D A$ , describe the circumscribing circle.
5. Mark off, on the circumference, the divisions  $2 E$ ,  $E F$ , equal to  $A B$ . Join  $2 E$ ,  $E F$ ,  $F B$ , and the pentagon is constructed on the given line  $A B$ .

**NOTE.**—A line must always be drawn from  $A$  to the *second* division on the semicircle, no matter how many sides the polygon is to have.

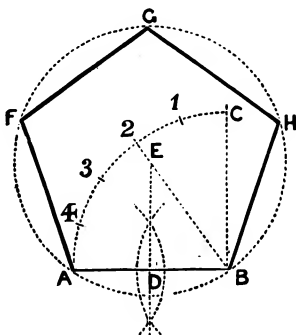
(B.)

### Another General Method.

1. At point  $B$  raise a perpendicular  $BC$  equal to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**), and describe the quadrant  $AC$ .
2. Divide  $AC$  into as many *equal* parts as the required polygon is to have sides (five).
3. Draw a line from  $B$  to the *second* point of division.
4. Bisect  $AB$  in  $D$  (**Pr. 1**), and from  $D$  erect a perpendicular to meet  $B 2$  in  $E$ . (**Pr. 2**).
5. From centre  $E$ , with  $EA$  radius, describe a circle; it will contain the required polygon.

E

6. With  $AB$  as radius, starting from  $A$ , cut the circle in the points  $F, G, H$  successively.

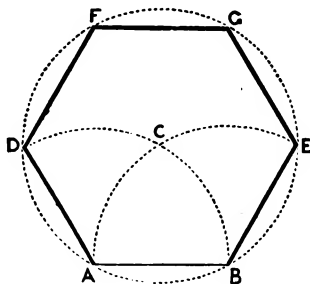


7. Join  $AF, FG, \&c.$ , by straight lines, and a *regular pentagon will be constructed upon a given straight line  $AB$ .*

### Problem 72.

To construct a regular hexagon on a given line  $AB$ .

1. With points  $A$  and  $B$  as centres, and radius  $AB$ , describe the arcs intersecting at  $C$ .

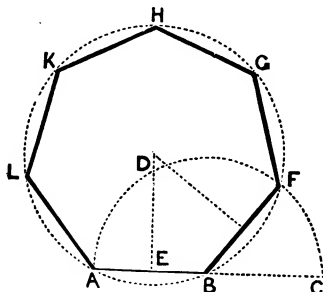


2. From the point  $C$ , with  $CA$  as radius, describe the circle.  
 3. From  $D$  and  $E$ , with the same radius, cut off  $F$  and  $G$ .  
 4. Join  $AD, DF, \&c.$ , by straight lines, and  $ADFGEB$  is the required hexagon.

**Problem 73.**

To construct a regular **heptagon** on a given line  $AB$ .

1. From  $B$  as centre, with radius  $AB$ , describe a semicircle cutting  $AB$  produced in  $C$ .
2. From  $A$ , with the same radius, cut the semicircle in  $D$ .
3. Bisect  $AB$  in  $E$  (**Pr. 1**), and join  $DE$ .



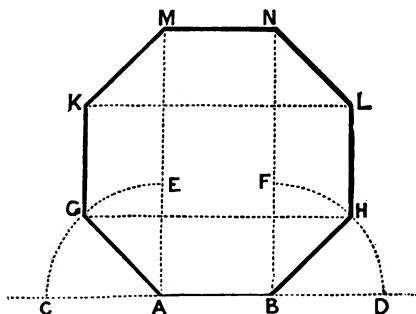
4. From  $C$ , with  $DE$  as radius, cut the semicircle in  $F$ .
5. Join  $BF$ ; it is another side of the heptagon.
6. Find the centre of the circle that contains it, and complete the heptagon. Then  $AB\dots L$  will be the heptagon required.

**Problem 74.**

To construct a regular **octagon** on a given line  $AB$ .

1. Produce  $AB$  both ways, and erect perpendiculars at  $A$  and  $B$  (**Pr. 2**).
2. From  $A$  and  $B$ , with radius  $AB$ , describe the quadrants  $CE$ ,  $FD$ .
3. Bisect these quadrants in the points  $G$  and  $H$  respectively.
4. Join  $AG$ ,  $BH$ ; these will be two more sides of the octagon.

5. Join  $GH$ , and at  $G$  and  $H$  erect perpendiculars  $GK$ ,  $HL$ , equal to  $AB$  (Pr. 2).

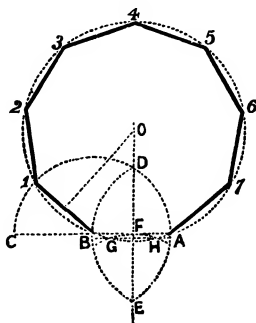


6. Join  $KL$ , and make the perpendiculars at  $A$  and  $B$  equal to  $GH$  or  $KL$ —viz.,  $AM$  and  $BN$ .
7. Join  $KM$ ,  $MN$ , and  $NL$ , and the required octagon will be constructed on the given line  $AB$ .

### Problem 75.

To construct a regular nonagon on a given line  $AB$ .

1. Produce the line  $AB$ ; and from  $B$ , with radius  $BA$ , describe an arc cutting the produced line  $AB$  in  $C$ , and being produced below  $A$ .



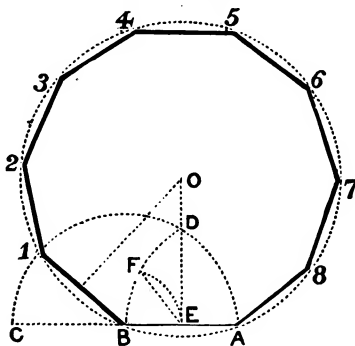
2. From  $A$ , with the same radius, describe an arc, cutting the first arc in  $D$  and  $E$ .

3. Draw line  $DE$ , cutting  $AB$  in  $F$ .
4. From  $D$ , with radius  $DA$ , describe arc  $AB$ .
5. From  $E$ , with radius  $EF$ , describe an arc, cutting the arc  $AB$  in  $G$  and  $H$ .
6. From  $C$ , with line  $GH$  as radius, cut the semicircle in 1.
7. Draw line  $B1$ ; it is a second side of the nonagon.
8. Bisect  $B1$ , and obtain  $O$ , the centre of the circle.
9. Mark off, on the circumference, the divisions 1 2, 2 3, &c., equal to  $B1$ . Join 1 2, 2 3, &c., and a nonagon is constructed on the given line  $AB$ .

### Problem 76.

To construct a regular decagon on a given line  $AB$ .

1. Produce the line  $AB$ , and from  $B$ , with radius  $BA$ , describe a semicircle, cutting it in  $C$ .



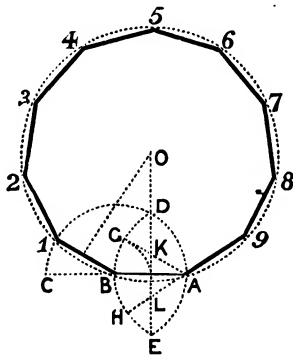
2. From  $A$ , with radius  $AB$ , describe an arc, cutting the semicircle in  $D$ , and bisect  $AB$  in  $E$  (**Pr. 1**).
3. From  $B$ , with radius  $BE$ , describe an arc, cutting arc  $BD$  in  $F$ .
4. Draw line  $EF$ .
5. From  $C$ , with radius  $EF$ , cut the semicircle in 1; then  $B1$  is a second side of the decagon.

6. Bisect  $B 1$ , and obtain  $O$ , the centre of the circle.
7. Mark off, on the circumference, the divisions 1 2, 2 3, &c., equal to  $B 1$ . Join 1 2, 2 3, &c., and a decagon is constructed on the given line  $AB$ .

### Problem 77.

To construct a regular **un-decagon** on a given line  $AB$ .

1. Produce the line  $AB$ , and from  $B$ , with radius  $BA$ , describe an arc, cutting the produced line  $AB$  in  $C$ , and being produced below  $A$ .
2. From  $A$ , with the same radius, describe an arc, cutting the first arc in  $D$  and  $E$ .
3. Draw line  $DE$ , bisecting  $AB$ .

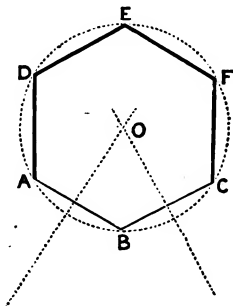


4. From  $B$ , with half  $BA$  as radius, describe an arc cutting  $BD$  in  $G$ .
5. Bisect the arc  $BE$  in  $H$ ; and draw  $AG$ ,  $AH$ , cutting  $ED$  in  $K$  and  $L$ .
6. From  $C$ , with radius  $AL$ , cut off  $C 1$  on the semicircle.
7. Draw line  $B 1$ ; it is a second side of the un-decagon.
8. Bisect  $B 1$ , and obtain  $O$ , the centre of the circle.
9. Mark off, on the circumference, the divisions 1 2, 2 3, &c., equal to  $B 1$ . Join 1 2, 2 3, &c., and an un-decagon is constructed on the given line  $AB$ .

**Problem 78.**

To complete a regular polygon, its two sides  $AB$ ,  $BC$  being given.

1. Bisect the lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$  by perpendiculars meeting at  $O$  (Pr. 1).

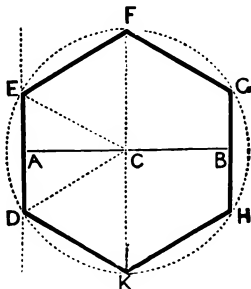


2. With centre  $O$ , and radius  $OA$ , describe the circle.
3. From  $A$ , mark off the distance  $AB$  to  $DE$ , &c. Join  $AD$ ,  $DE$ ,  $EF$ , &c., and a regular polygon will be completed—in this case a hexagon.

**Problem 79.**

To construct a regular hexagon, its diameter  $AB$  being given.

1. Bisect  $AB$  in  $C$  (Pr. 1).



2. Through the point  $A$  draw a line  $DE$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (Pr. 2).



3. On  $CA$ , as an altitude, construct an equilateral triangle, having its vertical angle at  $C$  (**Pr. 19**).
4. From  $C$ , with radius  $CE$  or  $CD$ , describe a circle.
5. From point  $E$ , mark off the distance  $ED$  to  $FG$ , &c. Join  $EF$ ,  $FG$ , &c., and a regular hexagon will be constructed, having the given diameter  $AB$ .

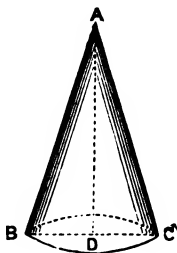
SECTION VI.—ELLIPSES, &c.

---

**DEFINITIONS.**

In order to understand the following definitions **clearly**, we must refer to that **SOLID** which is called a **CONE**.

1. A **cone** is a solid figure, the base of which is a circle, but which tapers to a point from the base upward. *Ex. ABC—*



**NOTE 1.**—A straight line drawn from the centre of the base to the *apex* (or summit) is called its *axis*. *Ex. AD—*

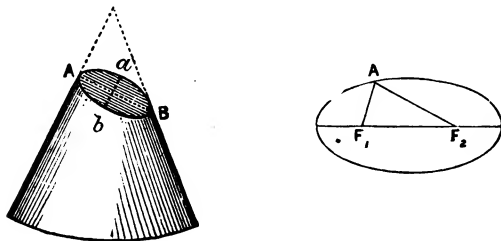
**NOTE 2.**—When the apex is *perpendicular* to the base, the cone is said to be a *right* cone.

**NOTE 3.**—When the axis is *not* perpendicular to the base, the cone is said to be an *oblique* cone.

**NOTE 4.**—If a right cone be cut in two parts by a plane parallel

to the base, the section will be *similar* to the base, *i.e.*, a circle. But if a cone be cut in some *other* way, the section has a distinctive name. Thus—

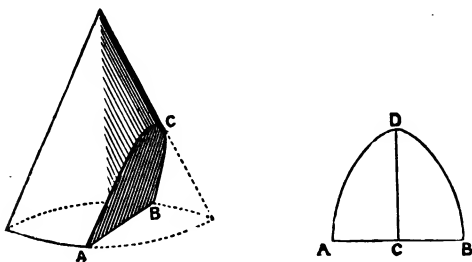
2. An **ellipse** is a section of a cone, produced by a plane which is not parallel to the base. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



NOTE 1.—Such a figure has *two* diameters, *unequal* in length; *viz.*, the *long* diameter  $AB$ , called the *transverse* or *major axis*, and the *short* diameter  $ab$ , called the *conjugate* or *minor axis*.

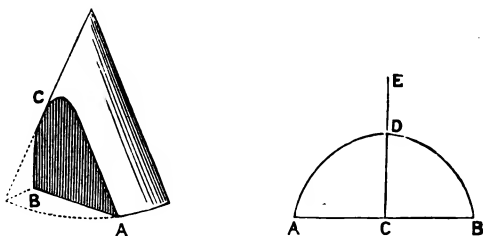
NOTE 2.—There are two important fixed points in the transverse axis called *foci* (singular, *focus*) equally distant from the centre, and are such that the sum of two straight lines  $F_1A$ ,  $AF_2$ , drawn from them to *any* point  $A$  in the circumference, is equal to the length of the major axis.

3. A **parabola** is a section of a cone, produced by a plane which is parallel to one of the sides. *Ex.*  $ABC$ —



NOTE.—Its base  $AB$  is termed its *double ordinate*,  $AC$  or  $CB$  being its *ordinate*; and its altitude  $CD$  is called its *abscissa*.

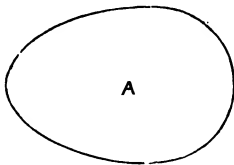
4. A **hyperbola** is a section of a cone, produced by a plane which is parallel to its axis. *Ex.*  $ABC$ —



NOTE 1.— $AB$  is termed its *double ordinate*,  $AC$  its *ordinate*,  $CD$  its *abscissa*, and  $CE$  its *diameter*.

NOTE 2.—The three foregoing sections are usually known as the “**conic sections**.”

5. An **oval**, as its name implies, is simply an *egg-shaped* figure, being wider at one end than at the other. *Ex.*  $A$ —

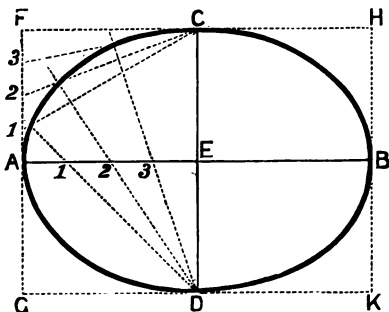


### Problem 80.

To describe an **ellipse**, its **axes** or **transverse** and **conjugate diameters**  $AB$  and  $CD$  being given.

1. Place the transverse diameter  $AB$  and the conjugate diameter  $CD$  perpendicular to each other at their centres  $E$ .
2. Through  $A$  and  $B$  draw the lines  $FG$ ,  $HK$  parallel to  $CD$  (Pr. 8), and through  $C$  and  $D$  draw  $FH$ ,  $GK$  parallel to  $AB$ , forming the rectangle  $GFHK$ .
3. Divide  $AE$  and  $AF$  into *any* number of equal parts, in this case *four* (Pr. 15).

Draw lines 1  $C$ , 2  $C$ , 3  $C$ ; and from  $D$ , through points 1, 2, 3 in the transverse diameter, draw lines which will intersect the former lines. The points of intersection will be in the curve of the ellipse required.



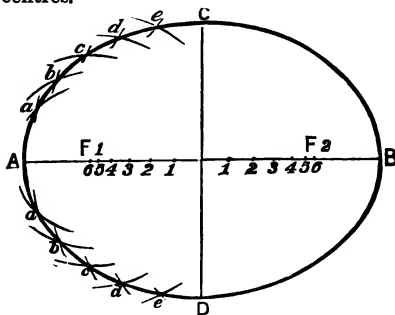
NOTE 1.—By repeating the process in the other divisions of the rectangle, the curve of the required ellipse will be completed.

NOTE 2.—The ellipse must be carefully drawn by hand.

N.B.—This method is that of intersecting lines.

### Another Method.

1. Place the transverse diameter  $AB$  and the conjugate diameter  $CD$  perpendicular to each other at their centres.



2. From  $C$  or  $D$ , with half  $AB$  as radius, describe arcs, cutting  $AB$  in  $F 1$ ,  $F 2$ . These points are the foci of the ellipse.

3. From  $F$  1 to the centre of  $AB$ , mark off *any* number of parts, as 1, 2, 3, 4, &c., and it will be more convenient if the divisions *lessen* as they approach  $F$  1.
4. From  $F$  1, with radius  $A$  1,  $A$  2,  $A$  3, &c., describe arcs in the spaces  $AC$  and  $AD$ .
5. From  $F$  2, with  $B$  1 (the first division towards  $A$  beyond the centre of  $AB$ ),  $B$  2,  $B$  3, &c., as radius, describe arcs cutting the arcs already described from  $F$  1; radius  $B$  1 cutting arc  $A$  1, &c., in  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ , &c. *The points of intersection will be in the curve of the ellipse required.*

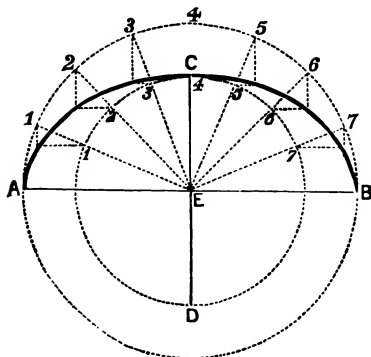
NOTE 1.—By repeating the process in the spaces  $BC$ ,  $BD$ , the curve of the required ellipse will be completed.

NOTE 2.—The ellipse must be carefully drawn by *hand*.

N.B.—*This method is that of intersecting arcs.*

### Another Method.

1. Place the diameters perpendicular to each other at their centres  $E$ , as before.

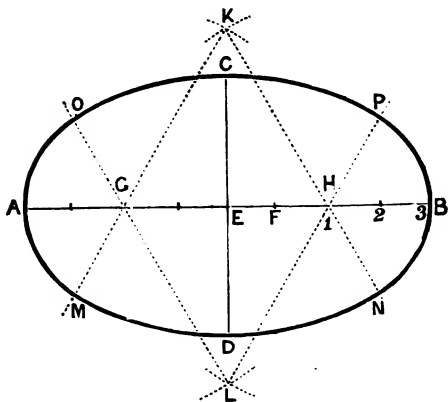


2. From  $E$ , with radii  $EC$  and  $EA$ , describe circles.
3. Divide the circumference of the larger circle into *any* number of equal parts, 1, 2, 3, 4, &c.
4. Draw radii from each point of division, cutting the circumference of the smaller circle also in 1, 2, 3, 4, &c.

5. From the divisions of the smaller circle, draw lines parallel to the transverse axis  $AB$ .
6. From the divisions of the larger circle, draw lines parallel to the conjugate axis  $CD$ . *The points of intersection will be in the curve of the ellipse required.*

### Another Method.

1. Place the given diameters  $AB$ ,  $CD$  perpendicular to each other at their centres  $E$ .
2. From  $A$ , with  $CD$  as radius, mark the point  $F$ .



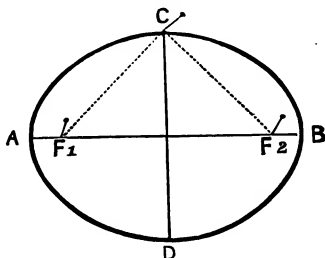
3. Divide  $FB$  into *three* equal parts.
4. From  $E$ , with *two of these parts* as radius, cut  $AB$  in  $G$  and  $H$ .
5. From  $G$  and  $H$ , with  $GH$  as radius, describe arcs in  $K$  and  $L$ .
6. From  $K$  and  $L$ , with radius  $KD$ , describe arcs  $MN$ ,  $OP$ ; and from  $G$  and  $H$ , with radius  $HB$ , describe arcs  $MO$ ,  $PN$ , which complete the required ellipse.

NOTE.—Lines drawn from  $K$  and  $L$ , through  $G$  and  $H$ , will show where the four arcs unite.

N.B.—*This method is by means of arcs of circles.*

**Another Method.**

1. Place the given diameters, as before, and find the foci  $F_1$ ,  $F_2$  (Pr. 80).
2. Fix a pin at each of the foci, and another at one end of the conjugate diameter, as  $C$ .



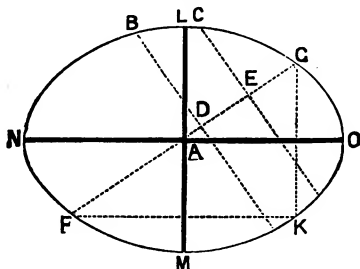
3. Tie a piece of thread tightly around the three pins, forming a triangle  $C, F_1, F_2$ .
4. Take out the pin at  $C$ , and put a pencil within and against the string at  $C$ , and keeping the string perfectly tight, and close to the paper throughout, describe the curve of the required ellipse, which will pass through  $B, D, A, C$ .

N.B.—This method is by mechanical means.

**Problem 81.**

To find the centre and axes of a given ellipse  $A$ .

1. Draw any two chords  $B$  and  $C$  parallel to each other (Pr. 8), and bisect them in  $D$  and  $E$  (Pr. 1).



2. Draw a diameter  $FG$  through  $D$  and  $E$ , and bisect it in  $A$ ; then  $A$  is the centre of the ellipse.

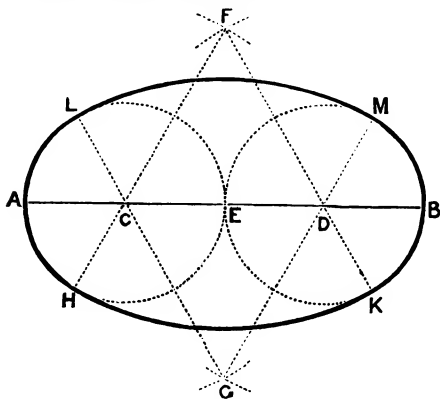


3. From  $A$ , with  $AG$  as radius, mark the point  $K$ , and join  $GK$  and  $KF$ .
4. Through  $A$  draw  $LM$  and  $NO$  parallel to  $GK$  and  $FK$  (Pr. 8); then  $NO$  and  $LM$  are the axes required.

### Problem 82.

To describe an elliptical figure, one diameter  $AB$  being given.

1. Divide  $AB$  into four equal parts, in points  $C$ ,  $E$ ,  $D$  (Pr. 15).
2. From  $C$  and  $D$ , with radius  $CA$  or  $DB$ , describe circles touching each other in  $E$ .



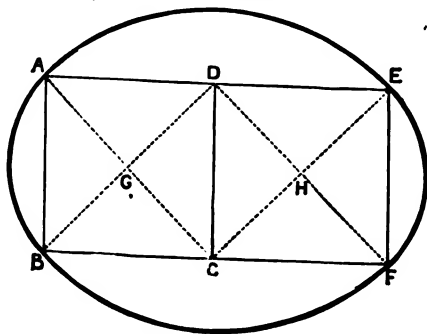
3. From  $C$  and  $D$ , with radius  $CD$ , describe arcs cutting each other in  $F$  and  $G$ .
4. Draw lines  $FC$ ,  $FD$ ,  $GC$ ,  $GD$ , and produce them until they cut the circles in  $H$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ .
5. From  $F$  and  $G$ , with radius  $FH$  or  $GM$ , draw arcs uniting  $H$  with  $K$  and  $L$  with  $M$ , which will complete the required elliptical figure.

### Problem 83.

To construct an elliptical figure, two squares  $ABCD$  and  $CDEF$  being given.

1. Draw diagonals in each of the squares, intersecting each other in  $G$  and  $H$ .

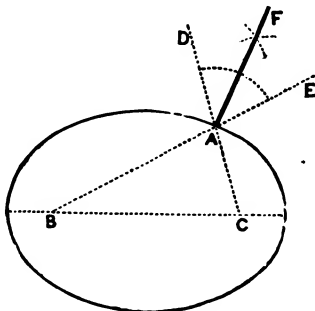
2. From  $C$ , with radius  $CA$  or  $CE$ , describe the arc  $AE$ .
3. From  $D$ , with the same radius, describe the arc  $BF$ .



4. From  $G$ , with radius  $GA$ , describe the arc  $BA$ .
5. From  $H$ , with the same radius, describe the arc  $EF$ , which will complete the required elliptical figure.

### Problem 84

To draw a perpendicular to the curve of a given ellipse from a given point  $A$ .

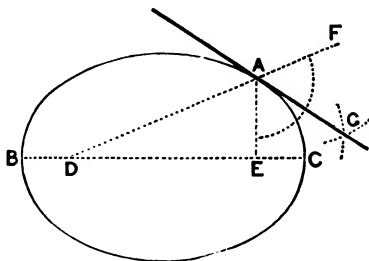


1. Draw the transverse axis, and find the foci  $B$  and  $C$  (Pr. 80).
2. Draw the lines  $BA$  and  $CA$ , and produce them, making the angle  $DAE$ .
3. Bisect angle  $DAE$  by line  $AF$  (Pr. 4); then  $AF$  is perpendicular to the curve of the given ellipse.

F

**Problem 85.**

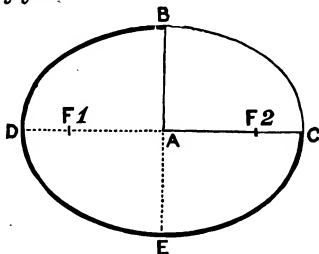
To draw a **tangent** to the curve of a given ellipse at a given point of contact **A**.



1. Draw the transverse axis  $BC$  (Pr. 81), and obtain the foci  $D$  and  $E$  (Pr. 80).
2. From  $D$  and  $E$  draw lines  $DA$ ,  $EA$  through the given point of contact  $A$ , producing one of them, as  $DA$  to  $F$ .
3. Bisect the external angle  $FAE$  in  $G$  (Pr. 4).
4. Draw line  $GA$ , and produce it; then  $GA$  is a tangent to the given ellipse, through the given point of contact  $A$ .

**Problem 86.**

To complete the curve of an ellipse which is partly constructed, one quarter  $ABC$  being given.

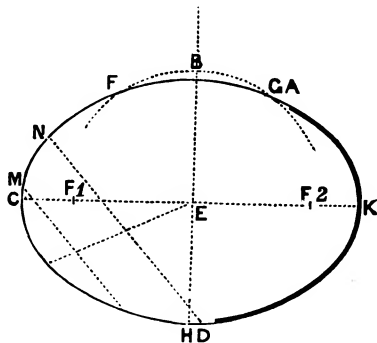


1. Produce  $CA$  beyond  $A$ , and make  $AD$  equal to  $AC$ ; also produce  $BA$  beyond  $A$ , and make  $AE$  equal to  $AB$ .
2. Find the foci  $F_1$  and  $F_2$  (Pr. 80), and proceed as in Problem 80. The curve  $BDEC$  is the required completion.

### Problem 87.

To complete the curve of an ellipse which is partly constructed, more than half of the curve  $ABCD$  being given.

1. At some portion of the given curve, not opposite the part which is incompleting, draw two parallel chords  $M, N$ , and find the centre  $E$  (Pr. 81).



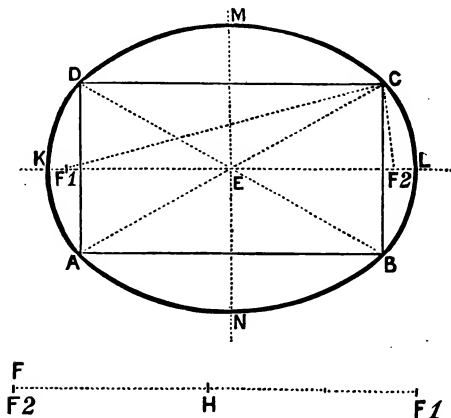
2. From  $E$ , with any sufficient radius, describe an arc, cutting the curve in  $F$  and  $G$ .
3. Bisect the arc  $FG$  in  $B$  (Pr. 1), and produce the line of bisection through  $E$  to  $H$ ; then  $BH$  is the conjugate axis.
4. At  $E$ , draw a line  $EC$  at right angles to  $BH$  (Pr. 2), meeting the given curve in  $C$ .
5. Produce  $CE$ , and make  $EK$  equal to  $EC$ ; then  $CK$  is the transverse axis.
6. Find the foci  $F_1, F_2$  (Pr. 80), and complete the curve by means of intersecting arcs (Pr. 80). The curve drawn from  $A$  to  $D$  through  $K$  is the required completion.

### Problem 88.

To describe an ellipse about a given rectangle  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw the diagonals  $AC, BD$ , meeting in  $E$ , the centre of the required ellipse, and draw the diameters indefinitely beyond the sides of the given rectangle.

2. From  $E$ , with any radius, cut the produced long diameter both ways in  $F^1$ ,  $F^2$ , the foci, and join them to one angle of the rectangle, as  $C$ .



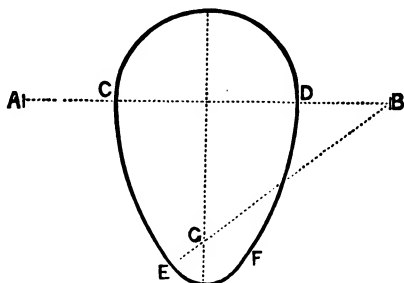
3. Draw any straight line, as  $FG$ , equal to the sum of  $CF^1$ ,  $CF^2$ , and bisect it in  $H$  (**Pr. 1**).
4. Make  $EK$  and  $EL$  equal to  $HF$  or  $HG$ ; then  $KL$  is the transverse axis.
5. From  $F^1$ , with half the transverse axis, as  $EK$ , as radius, cut the line perpendicular to  $KL$  in  $M$  and  $N$ ; then  $MN$  is the conjugate axis.
6. Complete the required ellipse by **Problem 80**.

### Problem 89.

To describe an oval by arcs of circles.

1. Draw any straight line  $AB$ , and describe a semicircle  $CD$  equal in diameter to the proposed oval.
2. From  $C$  and  $D$ , with the radius of the semicircle, cut the straight line in  $A$  and  $B$ .
3. From  $A$  and  $B$ , with radius  $BC$ , describe the arcs  $DF$  and  $CE$ .

4. From *A* or *B*, draw a straight line through the transverse diameter, cutting it in *G*, and meeting the opposite arc in *E* or *F*.

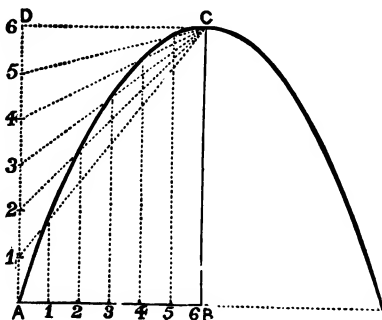


5. From *G*, with radius *GE*, describe arc *EF*, which will complete the required oval *CDFE*.

NOTE.—The oval may be made longer or shorter by increasing or diminishing the transverse diameter.

### Problem 90.

To construct a parabola, its ordinate *AB* and abscissa *BC* being given.



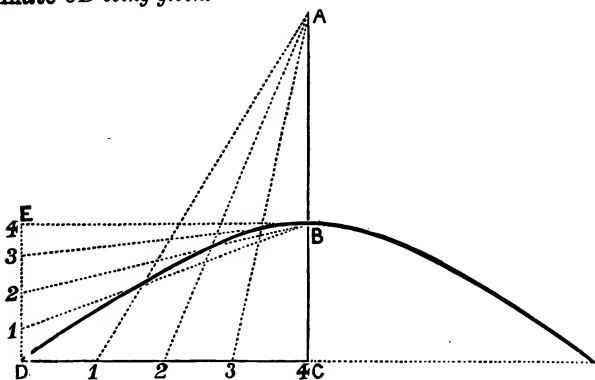
1. Through *C* draw a line *CD*, parallel and equal to *AB* (Pr. 8), and join *AD*.
2. Divide *AB* and *AD* into the same number of equal parts (say six).

3. From  $C$ , draw lines to the points of division in  $AD$ .
4. From the points of division in  $AB$ , draw lines parallel to  $BC$ , till each meets the corresponding line from  $AD$ .  
*The points of intersection will be in the curve of the required parabola.*

NOTE.—By repeating the process in the other half, the curve of the required parabola will be completed.

### Problem 91.

To construct a hyperbola, its diameter  $AB$ , abscissa  $BC$ , and ordinate  $CD$  being given.



1. Through  $B$  draw a line  $BE$ , parallel and equal to  $CD$  (Pr. 8), and join  $DE$ .
2. Divide  $DC$  and  $DE$  into the same number of equal parts (say four).
3. From  $B$ , draw lines to the points of division in  $DE$ .
4. From  $A$ , draw lines to the points of division in  $DC$ .  
*The points of intersection will be in the curve of the required hyperbola.*

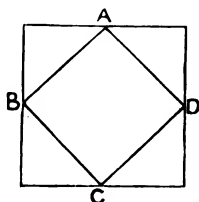
NOTE.—By repeating the process in the other half, the curve of the required hyperbola will be completed.

## SECTION VII.—INSCRIBED FIGURES.

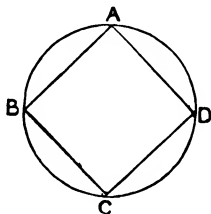
### DEFINITIONS.

1. **Inscribed figures.** Inscribed figures are either *rectilinear* or *circular*.

- (a.) A rectilinear figure is said to be *inscribed in* another rectilinear figure, when all the angles of the inscribed figure are upon the sides of the figure in which it is inscribed. *Ex. ABCD*—



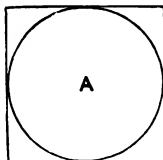
- (b.) A rectilinear figure is said to be *inscribed in* a circle, when all the angles of the inscribed figure are upon the circumference of the circle. *Ex. ABCD*—



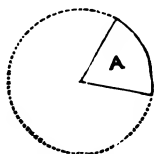
**NOTE.**—A *circle* is said to be *inscribed in* a rectilinear figure,



when the circumference of the circle touches each side of the figure. *Ex. A—*

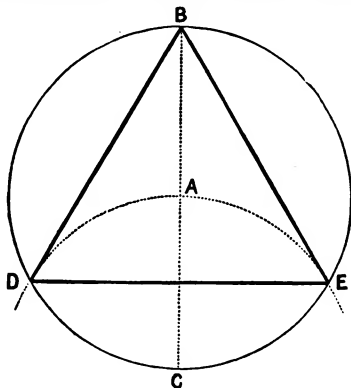


2. A **sector** of a circle is a figure contained by two radii and the intercepted arc. *Ex. A—*



### Problem 92.

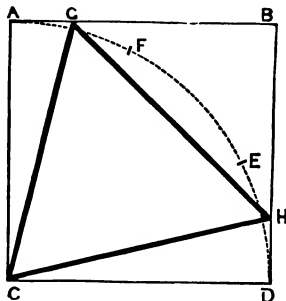
*To inscribe an equilateral triangle within a given circle A.*



1. Find the centre of the circle *A* (**Pr. 45**), and draw a diameter *BC*.
2. From *C* as centre, with radius *CA*, describe an arc cutting the circumference in *D* and *E*.
3. Join *DE*, *EB*, *BD*; then *DEB* is the required equilateral triangle inscribed within the given circle *A*.

**Problem 93.**

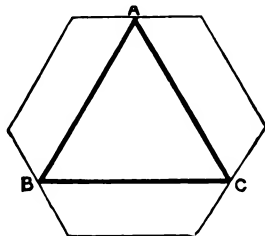
To inscribe an equilateral triangle in a given square  $ABCD$ .



1. From  $C$ , with radius  $AC$ , describe the quadrant  $AD$ .
2. From  $A$  and  $D$ , with the same radius, cut off  $AE$  and  $DF$ .
3. Bisect  $AF$  and  $ED$ , and through the points of bisection draw the lines  $CG$ ,  $CH$ , cutting the sides of the square in  $G$ ,  $H$ .
4. Draw  $GH$ ; then  $GCH$  is the required equilateral triangle, inscribed in the given square  $ABCD$ .

**Problem 94.**

To inscribe an equilateral triangle in a given hexagon, so that its sides are parallel to three sides of the hexagon.



1. Bisect the alternate sides of the given hexagon (Pr. 1) in the points  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ .

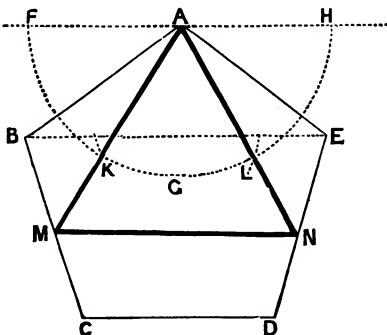
2. Join these points, and an equilateral triangle will be inscribed in the given hexagon.

NOTE.—By joining the three alternate angles of the hexagon, the largest equilateral triangle it will contain will be inscribed.

### Problem 95.

To inscribe an equilateral triangle in a given regular pentagon  $ABCDE$ .

1. From  $A$  as centre, with any radius, describe a semicircle  $FGH$ .



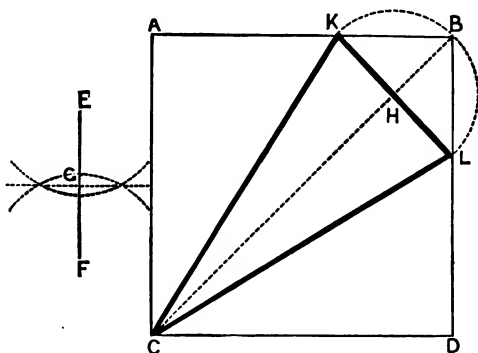
2. From  $F$  and  $H$ , with the same radius, describe arcs cutting the semicircle in  $K$  and  $L$ .
3. From  $A$ , draw lines through  $K$  and  $L$ , meeting the sides of the pentagon in  $M$  and  $N$  respectively.
4. Join  $MN$ , and  $AMN$  will be the required equilateral triangle, inscribed in the given pentagon  $ABCDE$ .

### Problem 96.

To inscribe an isosceles triangle within a given square  $ABCD$ , having a given base  $EF$ .

1. Draw a diagonal  $BC$ , and bisect  $EF$  in  $G$  (Pr. 1).
2. From  $B$ , mark off, on the diagonal  $BC$ ,  $BH$  equal to  $EG$  or  $GF$ .

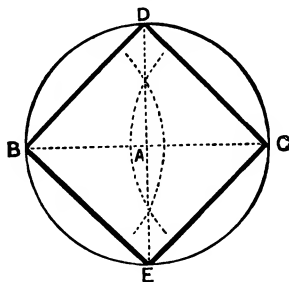
3. With  $H$  as centre, and  $HB$  radius, cut the sides of the square  $AB$  and  $BD$  in the points  $K$  and  $L$ .



4. Join  $CK$ ,  $KL$ , and  $LC$ , and an isosceles triangle  $CKL$  will be inscribed within the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 97.

To inscribe a square within a given circle  $A$ .

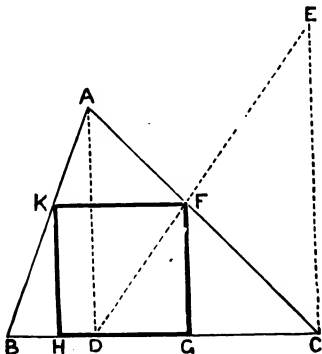


1. Find the centre of the circle  $A$  (**Pr. 45**).
2. Draw a diameter  $BC$ , and bisect it by another diameter  $DE$ .
3. Join  $BD$ ,  $DC$ ,  $CE$ , and  $EB$ ; then  $BDCE$  is the square inscribed within the given circle  $A$ .

**Problem 98.**

To inscribe a square within a given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Draw  $AD$ , the altitude of the given triangle (**Pr. 21**).
2. At point  $C$  raise a perpendicular  $CE$  (**Pr. 2**), and make it equal to the base  $BC$ .



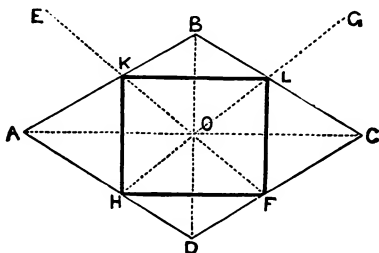
3. Draw the line  $ED$ , cutting  $AC$  in  $F$ .
4. From  $F$ , let fall a perpendicular  $FG$  on the base  $BC$  (**Pr. 3**); then  $FG$  is one side of the required square.
5. From  $G$ , mark off the length  $FG$  on the base  $BC$  in  $H$ ; and from  $H$ , with the same length, cut  $AB$  in  $K$ .
6. Join  $HK, KF$ ; then  $KFGH$  is a square inscribed in the given triangle  $ABC$ .

**Problem 99.**

To inscribe a square within a given rhombus  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw the two diagonals  $AC, BD$ .
2. Bisect the two angles  $AOB, COB$  (**Pr. 4**) by the lines  $EF, GH$ , cutting the sides of the rhombus in  $K$  and  $L$ .

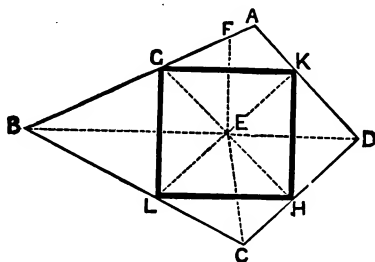
3. Join  $FH$ ,  $HK$ ,  $KL$ , and  $LF$ ; then  $FHKL$  is the required square, inscribed within the given rhombus  $ABCD$ .



**Problem 100.**

To inscribe a square in a given trapezium  $ABCD$ , which has its adjacent pairs of sides equal.

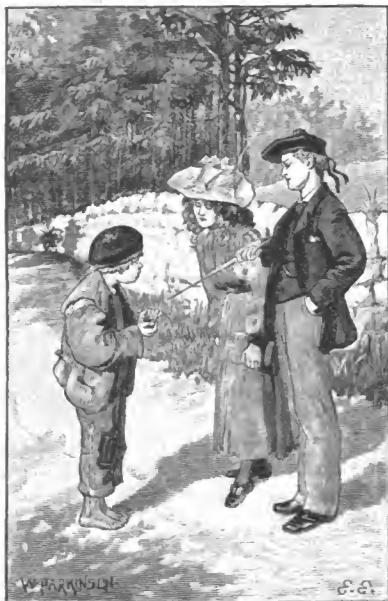
1. Draw a diagonal  $BD$ , bisecting the trapezium and the angle at  $B$ .



2. Find the centre of the figure in point  $E$  by bisecting another angle, as at  $C$  (Pr. 4).
3. At point  $E$  raise a perpendicular to  $BD$ , as  $EF$ .
4. Bisect the right angles on either side of  $EF$ , and produce the lines of bisection to cut the trapezium in  $GKHL$ .
5. Join  $GK$ ,  $KH$ ,  $HL$ , and  $LG$ , and the figure  $GKHL$  will be the required square, inscribed in the given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

## Problem 101.

BLACKIE & SON'S  
NEW BOOKS FOR YOUNG PEOPLE.



Specimen of the Illustrations reduced from  $5\frac{1}{2} \times 3\frac{3}{4}$  inches.

WHAT THE PRESS SAYS:

"Messrs. Blackie's books for boys are well printed, tastefully bound, and graphically illustrated. To their series, moreover, some of the best of story-writers contribute."—*The Guardian*.

"Among Messrs. Blackie's Christmas books there are always sure to be some of the best going. . . . Mr. Henry is one of the best boys' authors now writing."—*The Scotsman*.

"No boys' or girls' library can be considered equal to its purpose if it does not contain a selection from these handsome volumes."—*Liverpool Mercury*.

"The high reputation which Messrs. Blackie have earned as publishers of juvenile story-books is well sustained by the new volumes. The books are profusely and admirably illustrated; while the quality of the paper and printing, the strength of the binding, and the taste displayed in the cover designs could hardly be improved upon."—*School Guardian*.

pentagon  $ABCDE$ .

gies to  $BE$ , and equal to it

the pentagon in  $G$ .



nd  $HK$  parallel to  $BE$

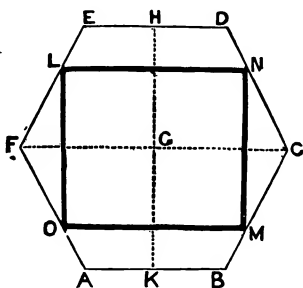
$GL$  parallel to  $HK$ ; then  
are, inscribed in the given

r hexagon  $ABCDEF$ .

$FC$  by a perpendicular  
ne of bisection cut the

as  $FGH$ ,  $CGH$  (Pr. 4),

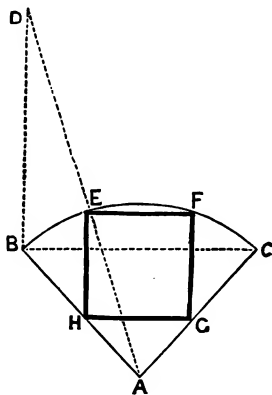
and produce the lines of bisection to meet the hexagon in  $L, M, N, O$ .



3. Join  $LN, NM, MO,$  and  $OL$  by straight lines, and the figure  $LMNO$  is the required square, inscribed in the given hexagon  $ABCDEF$ .

### Problem 103.

To inscribe a square within a given quadrant  $ABC$ , two of its corners being in the arc.



1. Draw the chord  $BC$ , and at one of the extremities, say  $B$ , draw  $BD$  perpendicular and equal to it (**Pr. 2**).



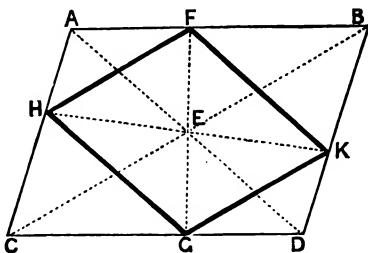
2. Draw the line  $DA$ , cutting the arc  $BC$  in  $E$ .
3. From  $C$ , cut off  $CF$ , equal to  $BE$ , and draw the chord  $EF$ .  $EF$  is a side of the required square. Complete the square (Pr. 34), and  $EFGH$  will be the required square, inscribed within the given quadrant  $ABC$ .

NOTE.—The same method is to be observed in inscribing a square in any sector of a circle (acute-angled or obtuse-angled).

### Problem 104.

To inscribe a four-sided equilateral figure in any given parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , cutting each other in  $E$ .



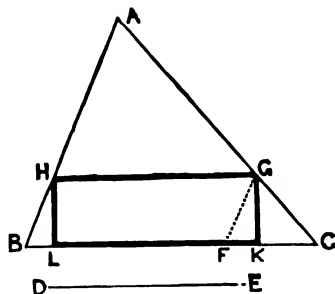
2. Bisect any two of the adjacent angles at  $E$  (Pr. 4), by lines cutting the sides of the parallelogram in  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ .
3. Join  $HF$ ,  $FK$ , &c., and  $GHEK$  will be a four-sided equilateral figure, inscribed in a given parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 105.

To inscribe a rectangle in a given triangle  $ABC$ , having a side equal to a given line  $DE$ .

1. On  $BC$ , mark off  $BF$  equal to  $DE$ .
2. Through  $F$ , draw  $FG$  parallel to  $AB$ ; and through  $G$ , draw  $GH$  parallel to  $BC$  (Pr. 9).

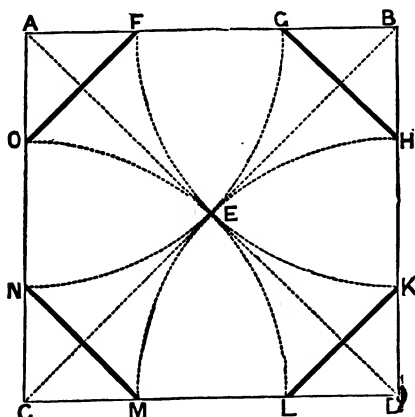
3. From  $G$  and  $H$ , draw  $GK$  and  $HL$  perpendicular to the base  $BC$  (Pr. 3); then  $HGKL$  is the required rectangle, and it is inscribed in the given triangle  $ABC$ .



**Problem 106.**

*To inscribe an octagon in a given square ABCD.*

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , intersecting each other in  $E$ .



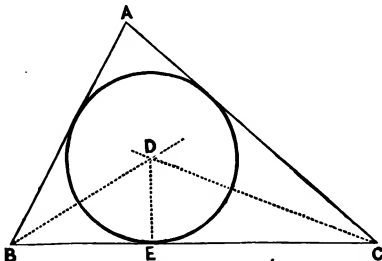
2. From  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $D$ , with  $CE$  as radius, describe quadrants cutting the sides of the square in  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ .
3. Join these points, and the required octagon will be inscribed in the given square  $ABCD$ .

G

**Problem 107.**

To inscribe a circle within any given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Bisect any two of the angles, as  $B$  and  $C$  (Pr. 4), and let the bisecting lines be produced and meet at  $D$ , the centre of the triangle.

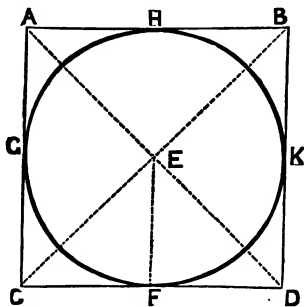


2. From  $D$  draw a perpendicular  $DE$ , to any side of the triangle (Pr. 3).
3. From centre  $D$ , with radius  $DE$ , inscribe the required circle, which will be tangential to each side of the given triangle  $ABC$ .

**Problem 108.**

To inscribe a circle within a given square  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , cutting each other in  $E$ .

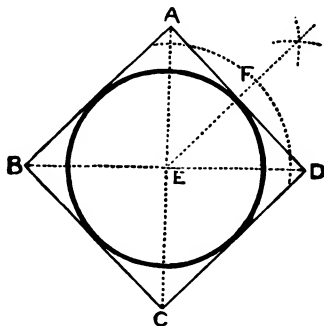


2. From  $E$ , draw  $EF$  perpendicular to  $CD$  (Pr. 3).
3. From  $E$  as centre, with radius  $EF$ , draw a circle  $FGHK$ , which will be inscribed in the given square  $ABCD$ .

**Problem 109.**

*To inscribe a circle in a given rhombus  $ABCD$ .*

1. Draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , cutting each other in  $E$ .

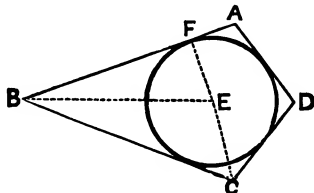


2. From  $E$ , draw a line perpendicular to any side  $AD$ , cutting it in  $F$  (Pr. 3).
3. From centre  $E$ , with radius  $EF$ , inscribe the required circle in the given rhombus  $ABCD$ .

**Problem 110.**

*To inscribe a circle in a given trapezium  $ABCD$ , which has its adjacent pairs of sides equal.*

1. Bisect any two of its adjacent angles  $ABC$ ,  $BCD$  by lines meeting in  $E$  (Pr. 4).

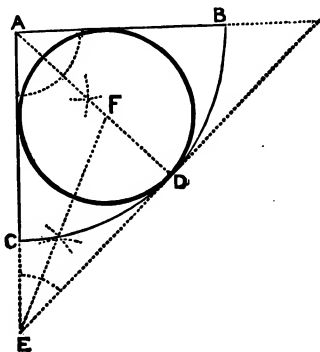


2. From point  $E$ , draw  $EF$  perpendicular to one of the sides  $AB$  (Pr. 3).
3. From centre  $E$ , with radius  $EF$ , inscribe the required circle within the given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 111.

To inscribe a circle in a given quadrant  $ABC$ .

1. Bisect the angle at  $A$ , the bisecting line cutting the arc in  $D$  (Pr. 4).



2. At point  $D$ , draw a tangent to the arc (Pr. 54), meeting one or both of the sides of the angle produced, as  $AC$  in  $E$ .
3. Bisect the angle at  $E$  (Pr. 4), the line of bisection cutting  $AD$  in  $F$ , the centre. *The circle described from  $F$ , with radius  $FA$ , will be the required circle, inscribed in the given quadrant  $ABC$ .*

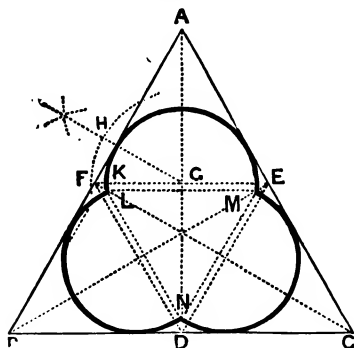
NOTE.—The same method is to be observed in inscribing a circle in *any* sector of a circle (acute-angled or obtuse-angled).

### Problem 112.—The Trefoil.

To inscribe three equal semicircles, having their adjacent diameters equal, within a given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Bisect the angles at  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  (Pr. 4), and draw the lines of bisection to meet the sides in  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $F$ .
2. Join  $DE$ ,  $EF$ ,  $FD$ ; and from  $G$ , in  $EF$ , draw  $GH$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (Pr. 3).
3. From  $G$ , with  $GH$  as radius, describe an arc, meeting  $EF$  in  $K$ .

4. Draw a line from  $K$  parallel to  $AB$ , cutting  $FC$  in  $L$ , and draw  $LM$  parallel to  $FE$  (Pr. 8).

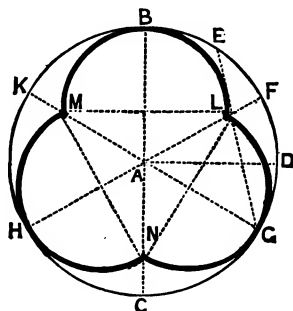


5. On  $LM$  describe an equilateral triangle  $LMN$  (Pr. 18), cutting  $AD$  in  $N$ .
6. On  $LM$ ,  $MN$ , and  $LN$  as diameters, describe the three required semicircles within the given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 113.

To inscribe three equal semicircles, having adjacent diameters, within a given circle  $A$ .

1. Find the centre  $A$  of the given circle (Pr. 45).



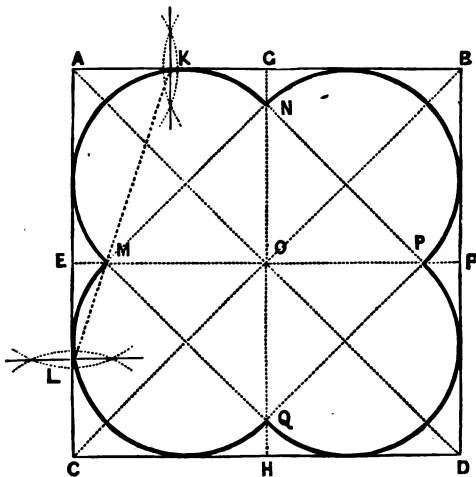
2. Draw any diameter  $BC$ , and the radius  $AD$  perpendicular to it.

3. Trisect the arc  $BD$  in  $E$  and  $F$  (Pr. 5).
4. On the other side of  $D$ , cut off  $DG$  equal to  $DF$ , and draw the diameters  $FH$ ,  $GK$ .
5. Join  $EG$ , cutting the diameter  $FH$  in  $L$ .
6. From the centre  $A$ , at the distance  $AL$ , cut off  $M$  and  $N$  on the diameters  $KG$  and  $BC$ .
7. Join  $LM$ ,  $MN$ ,  $NL$ ; then  $LM$ ,  $MN$ , and  $NL$  are the adjacent diameters of the three required semicircles to be inscribed within the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 114—The Quatrefoil.

To inscribe four equal semicircles, having their diameters adjacent, within a given square  $ABCD$ , each touching two sides of the square.

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , also the diameters  $EF$ ,  $GH$ .

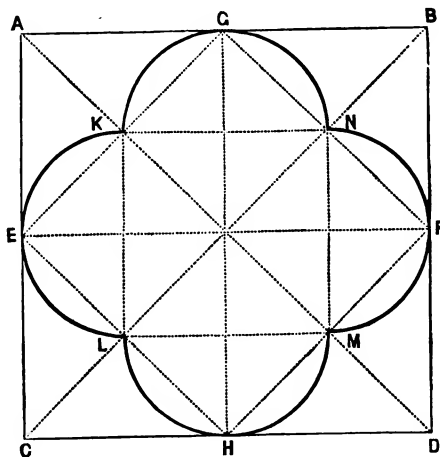


2. Bisect  $AG$  and  $EC$  in the points  $K$  and  $L$  (Pr. 1).
3. Join  $KL$ , cutting  $EF$  at  $M$ .
4. With centre  $O$ , and radius  $OM$ , mark off  $N$ ,  $P$ ,  $Q$ .
5. Join  $MN$ ,  $NP$ ,  $PQ$ ,  $QM$ , which are the diameters on which to describe the four required semicircles within the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 115.

To inscribe four equal semicircles, having their diameters adjacent, within a given square  $ABCD$ , each touching one side of the square.

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$  and  $BC$ , also the diameters  $EF$  and  $GH$ .



2. Draw the remaining diagonals of each of the smaller squares—viz.,  $GE$ ,  $EH$ ,  $HF$ , and  $FG$ , intercepting the former diagonals in  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ , and  $N$ .
3. Join these points by lines  $KL$ ,  $LM$ ,  $MN$ ,  $NK$ , which are the diameters on which to describe the four required semicircles within the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 116.

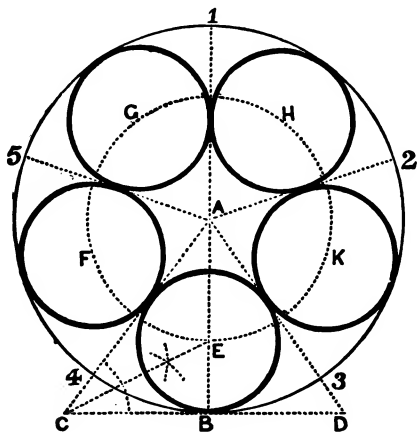
To inscribe any number of equal circles (in this case five) in a given circle  $A$ .

#### General Method.

1. Divide the circumference into the *same* number of equal parts as there are required circles to be inscribed (in



this case *five*), and draw radii to each point of division, as *A 1*, *A 2*, &c. In each of these *five* sectors a circle is to be inscribed.



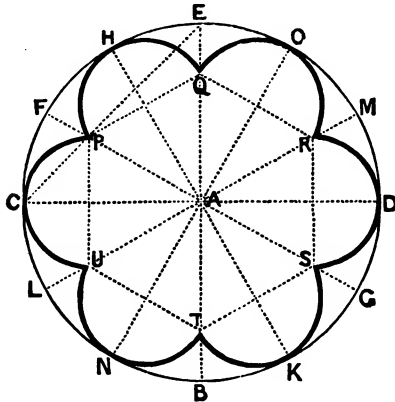
2. Bisect one of them, as *4 A 3*, by radius *AB* (Pr. 4), and draw a tangent at *B* (Pr. 54), cutting *A 4* and *A 3* produced in *C* and *D*.
3. Find *E*, the centre of the triangle *ACD* (Pr. 22), and inscribe a circle in it.
4. From *A* as centre, with *AE* as radius, describe the inner circle.
5. On this circle, mark off from *E*, the centres for the four other circles, as *F*, *G*, *H*, *K*; and inscribe them. There will then be *five* equal circles, inscribed in the given circle *A*.

### Problem 117.

To inscribe any number of equal semicircles (in this case six) in a given circle *A*.

1. Draw the diameters *EB* and *CD* at right angles to each other.
2. Divide the circumference into *twice* as many equal parts as there are to be semicircles (in this case twelve equal parts) by trisecting each right angle (Pr. 5).

3. Draw the diameters  $FG, HK, LM, NO$ ; and no matter how many semicircles are required, join  $EC$ , and where it cuts the next diameter, as  $FG$ , we obtain a point  $P$ , which is the extremity of the diameter of one of the semicircles.



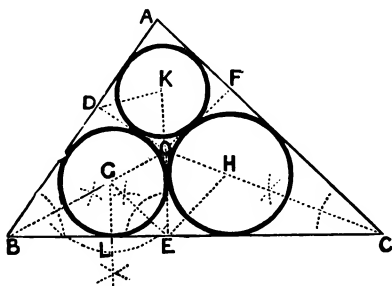
4. From  $A$ , mark off on each alternate diameter, the distances  $AQ, AR, AS, AT, AU$ , equal to  $AP$ .
5. Join  $PQ, QR, RS, ST, TU$ , and  $UP$ . These are the diameters on which to inscribe the required semicircles in the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 118.

To inscribe three circles in any given triangle  $ABC$ , each touching two others, and two sides of the triangle.

1. Find the centre  $O$  of the triangle  $ABC$  by bisecting two angles  $B$  and  $C$  (Pr. 22), and from  $O$ , draw a perpendicular to each side of the triangle (Pr. 3) meeting  $AB$  in  $D$ ,  $BC$  in  $E$ , and  $AC$  in  $F$ .
2. Bisect two adjacent angles of each of three quadrilaterals thus formed, the bisecting lines meeting in  $G, H, K$ , the centres of the three required circles, the radius of each circle being found by drawing a perpendicular from

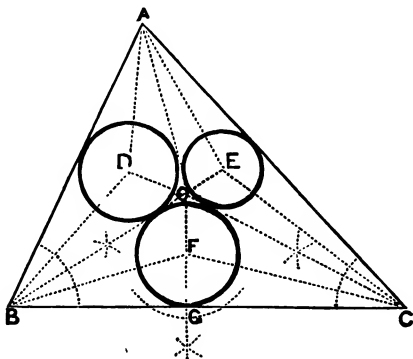
each centre to one side of each quadrilateral, as  $GL$  to  $BE$  (Pr. 3).



3. Inscribe the required circles  $G$ ,  $H$ , and  $K$  in the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 119.

To inscribe **three circles** in any given triangle  $ABC$ , each touching the other two, and one side of the triangle.



1. Find the centre  $O$  of the triangle  $ABC$  by bisecting the angles at  $B$  and  $C$  (Pr. 22), and draw  $AO$ .
2. Inscribe a circle in each of the triangles thus formed, by bisecting two angles of each, the bisecting lines meeting

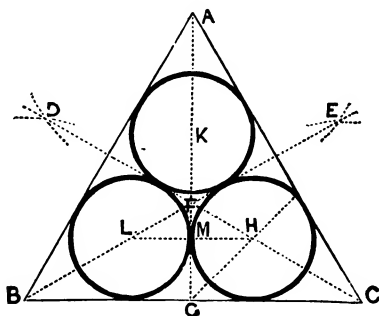
in  $D, E, F$ , the radius of each circle being found by drawing a perpendicular from the centre to one of the sides of each triangle, as  $FG$  to  $BC$  (Pr. 22).

3. Inscribe the required circles  $D, E$ , and  $F$  in the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 120.

To inscribe three equal circles within a given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ , touching each other, and two sides of the triangle.

1. From  $A$  and  $B$ , and  $A$  and  $C$ , describe arcs intersecting in  $D$  and  $E$ .



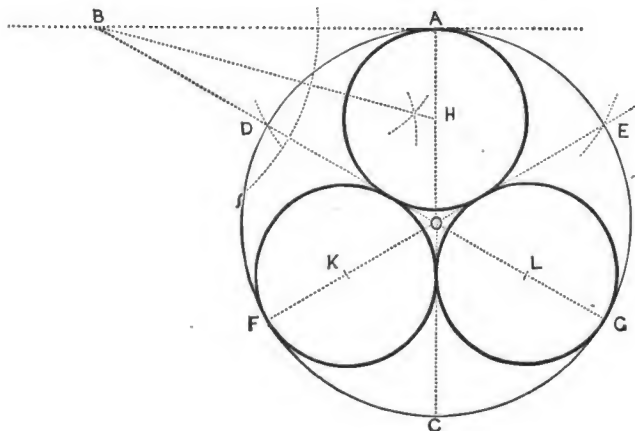
2. Draw the lines  $BE$  and  $CD$ , cutting the centre of the triangle in  $F$ .
3. Draw the line  $AG$ , and bisect the angle  $FGC$  (Pr. 4), the line of bisection cutting  $CD$  in  $H$ .
4. From  $F$ , set off the distance  $FH$  on the lines  $AG$  and  $BE$ , in the points  $K$  and  $L$ ; then  $H, K, L$  will be the three centres of the required circles.
5. Draw the line  $LH$ , and  $HM$  will be the radius of the required circles, to be inscribed in the given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 121.

To inscribe three equal circles in a given circle  $O$ .

1. At any point  $A$ , draw a tangent  $AB$  (Pr. 54), and  $AC$  at right angles to it (Pr. 2).

2. From  $A$ , with radius  $AO$ , cut the circumference in  $D$  and  $E$ .
3. From  $D$  and  $E$ , draw lines through  $O$ , cutting the circumference in  $G$  and  $F$ , and the tangent in the point  $B$ .



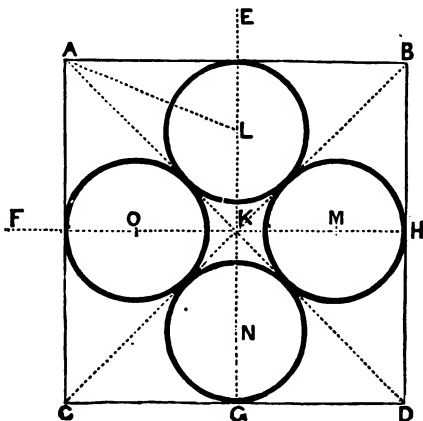
4. Bisect the angle  $ABD$  (Pr. 4), and produce the line of bisection until it meets  $AC$  in  $H$ .
5. From  $O$ , with radius  $OH$ , cut the lines  $EF$  and  $DG$  in the points  $K$  and  $L$ .
6. From  $H$ ,  $K$ , and  $L$ , with radius  $HA$ , describe the three required circles, each of which will touch the other two, and the given outer circle  $O$ .

### Problem 122.

To inscribe four equal circles in a given square  $ABCD$ , touching each other, and one side only of the square.

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ . With centres  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , and any radius, describe arcs at  $E$  and  $F$ .
2. From  $E$  and  $F$ , draw the diameters  $EG$ ,  $FH$ .

3. The diagonals divide the square into four equal triangles, viz.,  $AKB$ ,  $BKD$ ,  $CKD$ , and  $AKC$ . We have therefore only to describe a circle in each (Pr. 107).



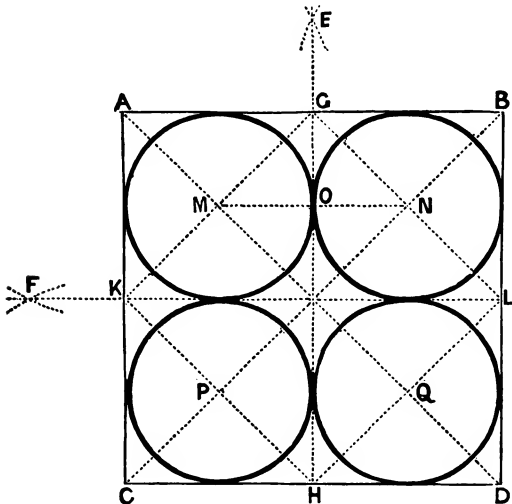
4. In the triangle  $AKB$  the angle  $AKB$  is already bisected by  $KE$ ; by bisecting one of the other angles, say  $KAB$ , by the line  $AL$  (Pr. 4), we obtain point  $L$ , the centre of one of the circles.
5. With centre  $K$ , and radius  $KL$ , mark off the points  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ . Then with centres  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ , and radius  $LE$ , describe the four required circles in the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 123.

To inscribe four equal circles within a given square  $ABCD$ , touching each other, and each circle also to touch two sides of the given square.

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ . With centres  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , and any radius, describe arcs at  $E$  and  $F$ .
2. From  $E$  and  $F$ , draw the diameters  $GH$  and  $KL$ .

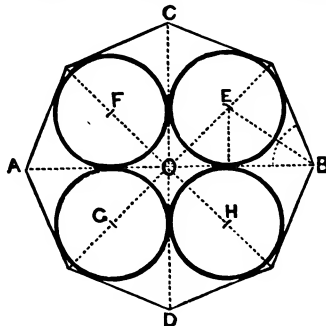
3. Join  $KG$ ,  $GL$ ,  $LH$ , and  $HK$ . Also join  $MN$ .



4. With centres  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $P$ , and  $Q$ , and radius  $MO$ , describe the four required circles within the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 124.

*To inscribe four equal circles in a given octagon.*



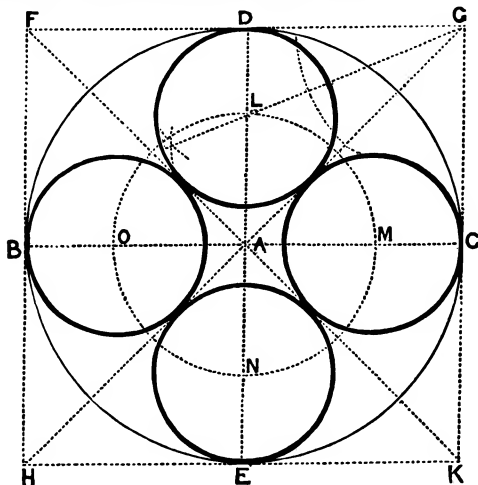
1. Draw any two diagonals at right angles to each other, as

$AB, CD$ , intersecting each other in the centre  $O$ . These divide the given octagon into four equal trapezia.

- Find the centre of each, as  $E, F, G, H$ , and inscribe a circle in each trapezium (**Pr. 110**). The required four equal circles will then be inscribed in the given octagon.

### Problem 125.

To inscribe four equal circles in a given circle  $A$ .



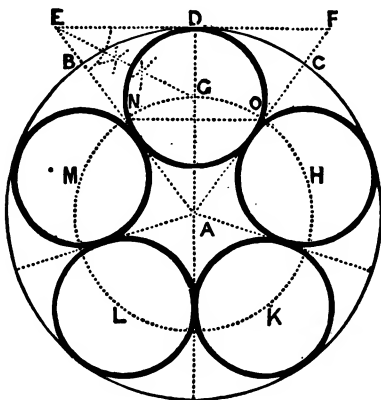
- Draw the diameters  $BC$  and  $DE$  at right angles to each other.
- From  $B, C, D$ , and  $E$ , describe arcs cutting each other in  $F, G, H, K$ .
- Join these points, and a square will be described about the circle  $A$ .
- Draw the diagonals  $FK$  and  $HG$ .
- Bisect the angle  $DGA$  (**Pr. 4**), and produce the line of bisection until it cuts  $DE$  in  $L$ .
- From  $A$ , with radius  $AL$ , describe a circle cutting the lines  $BC$  and  $DE$  in  $M, N, O$ .
- From centres  $L, M, N, O$ , with radius  $LD$ , describe the four required circles within the given circle  $A$ .



### Problem 126.

To inscribe five equal circles in a given circle *A*.

1. Divide the circumference into five equal parts, as in the case of inscribing a pentagon (Pr. 63).

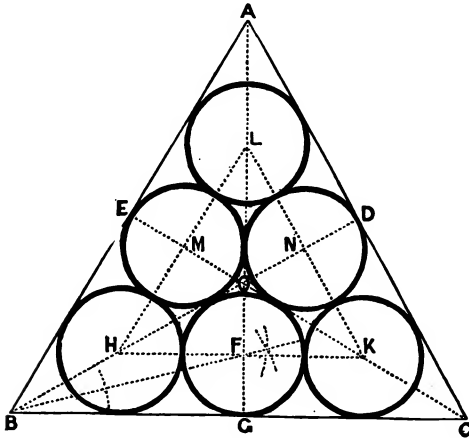


2. From the centre *A*, draw lines through two divisions, as *B* and *C*, and produce them.
3. Bisect the angle *BAC* (Pr. 4), and draw *AD*, touching the circumference of the given circle in *D*.
4. At *D*, draw a tangent to the circle (Pr. 54), cutting *AB* and *AC* produced, and completing the triangle *EAF*.
5. Inscribe a circle in this triangle (Pr. 107), having its centre at *G*.
6. From *A*, with *AG* as radius, inscribe the circle *GHKLM*, cutting *AE* and *AF* in *N* and *O*.
7. From *A*, with the line *NO* as radius, cut the circumference of the inner circle in *H*, *K*, *L*, *M*.
8. From those points, with radius *DG*, describe the remaining four circles within the given circle *A*, to complete the figure.

**Problem 127.**

*To inscribe six equal circles within a given equilateral triangle. ABC.*

1. Draw the lines  $BD$ ,  $CE$ , and  $AG$ , bisecting the angles and sides of the given triangle, and cutting each other in  $O$ .



2. Bisect the angle  $OBG$  (Pr. 4), and the point  $F$ , where the line of bisection cuts  $AG$ , will be the centre of one of the isosceles triangles into which the equilateral triangle has been divided.
3. Through  $F$ , draw  $HK$  parallel to  $BC$  (Pr. 9); and from  $H$  and  $K$ , draw  $HL$  and  $KL$  parallel to  $AB$  and  $AC$ , and cutting  $CE$  and  $BD$  in  $M$  and  $N$ .
4. From points  $F$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ , with radius  $FG$ , describe the six required circles within the given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ .

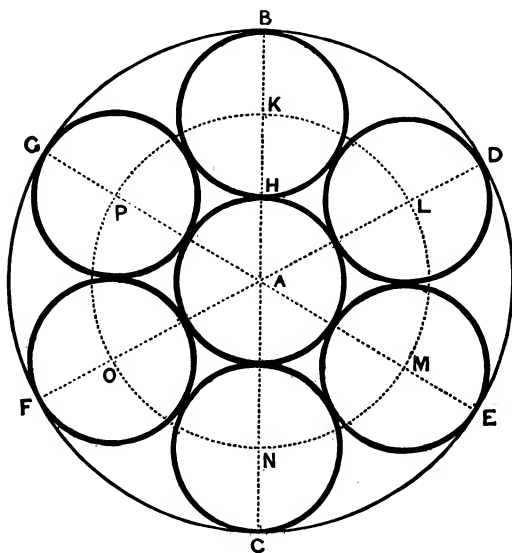
**Problem 128.**

*To inscribe seven equal circles in a given circle A.*

1. Draw a diameter  $BC$ , and from the point  $B$ , with the radius of the circle, divide the circumference into six equal parts, in  $D$ ,  $E$ ,  $C$ , &c., and draw the radii

H

2. Divide one of the radii, as  $AB$ , into three equal parts, in the points  $H$ ,  $K$ .
3. From  $A$ , with radius  $AH$ , describe the central circle.



4. From  $A$ , with radius  $AK$ , describe a circle which, cutting the radii, will give the points  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ ,  $P$ .
5. From points  $K$ ,  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ ,  $P$ , with radius  $AH$ , describe the six circles, which, with the central circle, constitute the seven required circles within the given circle  $A$ .

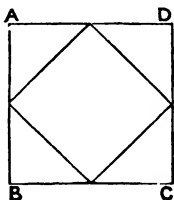
## SECTION VIII.—DESCRIBED FIGURES.

---

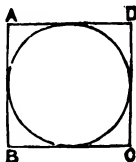
### DEFINITIONS.

1. **Described figures.** Described figures are either *rectilineal* or *circular*.

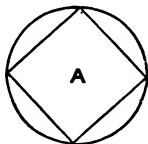
- (a.) A rectilineal figure is said to be *described about* another rectilineal figure, when all the sides of the circumscribed figure pass through the angular points of the figure about which it is described. *Ex. ABCD—*



- (b.) A rectilineal figure is said to be *described about* a circle, when each side of the circumscribed figure touches the circumference of the circle. *Ex. ABCD—*



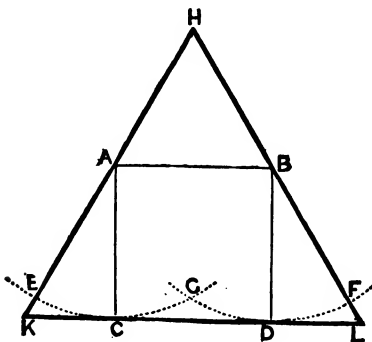
NOTE.—A circle is said to be *described about* a rectilinear figure, when the circumference of the circle passes through all the angular points of the figure about which it is described. *Ex. A*—



### Problem 129.

To describe an equilateral triangle about a given square  $ABCD$ .

1. From points  $A$  and  $B$ , with  $AC$  as radius, describe arcs cutting each other in  $G$ .

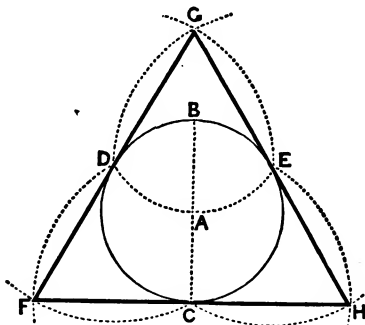


2. From  $G$  as centre, with the same radius, cut these arcs in  $E$  and  $F$ .
3. Join  $EA$  and  $FB$ , and produce them to meet in  $H$ .
4. Produce  $CD$  until it cuts the lines  $HE$  and  $HF$  produced in  $K$  and  $L$ ; then  $HKL$  is the required equilateral triangle described about the given square  $ABCD$ .

**Problem 130.**

To describe an equilateral triangle about a given circle *A*.

1. Draw a diameter *BC*.

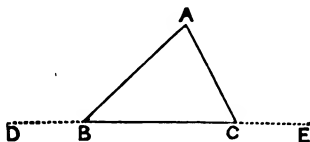


2. From *B*, with radius *BA*, cut the circumference in *D* and *E*.
3. From *D*, *E*, and *C* as centres, with *DE* as radius, describe arcs intercepting in *G*, *F*, and *H*.
4. Join *GF*, *FH*, and *HG*; then *FGH* is the required equilateral triangle described about the given circle *A*.

**Problem 131.**

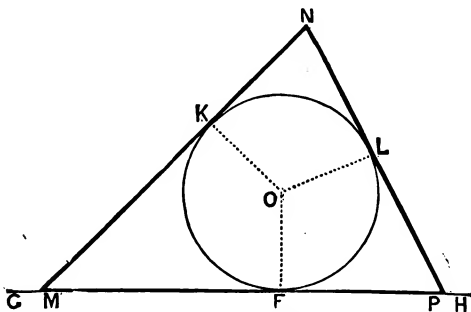
To describe a triangle about a given circle *O*, having angles equal to those of a given triangle *ABC*.

1. Produce any side of the triangle, as *BC*, both ways to *D* and *E*.



2. Draw any radius *OF*, and draw *GH* as a tangent through *F* (Pr. 54).

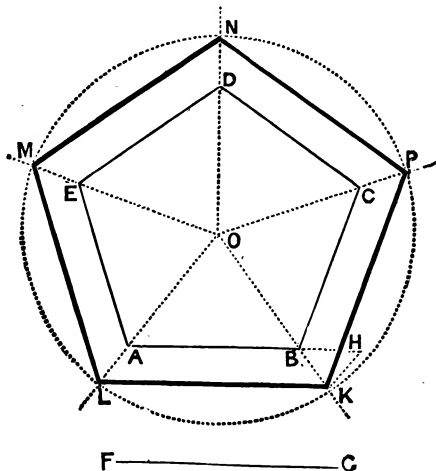
3. Make angle  $FOK$  equal to angle  $ABD$ , and angle  $FOL$  equal to angle  $ACE$  (Pr. 10).



4. Through  $K$ , draw  $MN$  at right angles to  $KO$ , and through  $L$ , draw  $NP$  at right angles to  $LO$  (Pr. 2); then the triangle  $MNH$  is described about the given circle  $O$ , and has its angles equal to those of the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 132.

To describe a pentagon about a given pentagon  $ABCDE$ , having its sides parallel to it, and equal to a given straight line  $FG$ .



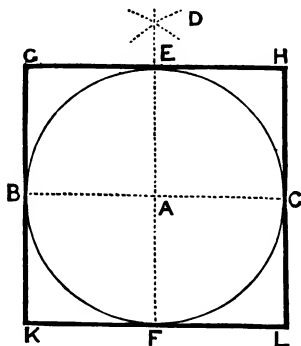
1. Find the centre of the pentagon by bisecting two adjacent angles (Pr. 4).

2. From the centre  $O$ , draw the five radii, and produce them *indefinitely*.
3. Produce *one* of the sides, as  $AB$ , until it is equal to  $FG$ ; viz.  $AH$ .
4. From  $H$ , draw a line parallel to  $OA$ , cutting the radius  $OB$  in  $K$ .
5. From  $O$ , with radius  $OK$ , describe a circle cutting the produced radii in  $L, M, N, P$ .
6. Join  $KL, LM, \&c.$ , by straight lines, and a pentagon  $KLMNP$  will be described about a given pentagon  $ABCDE$ , and having its sides equal to the given line  $FG$ .

### Problem 133.

To describe a square about a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw the diameter  $BC$ . With centres  $B$  and  $C$ , and any radius, describe arcs at  $D$ . From  $D$ , draw the diameter  $EF$ .



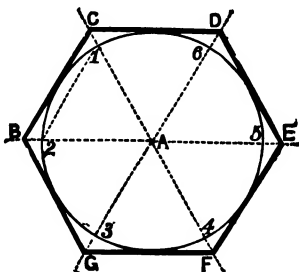
2. With centres  $B, E, C$ , and  $F$ , and radius  $BA$ , describe arcs cutting at  $G, H, K, L$ .
3. Join  $GH, HL, LK$ , and  $KG$ , and  $GHLK$  is the required square described about the given circle  $A$ .



### Problem 134.

To construct any regular polygon (say a hexagon) about a given circle *A*.

1. Divide the circumference into *as many equal parts* as the polygon is to have sides—six (**Pr. 64**).
2. Draw radii to these points of division, and produce them beyond the circumference.



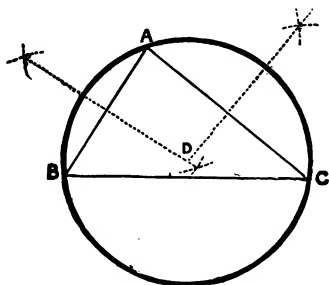
3. Join 1 2, and draw *BC* parallel to 1 2, and tangential to the circle (**Pr. 54**).
4. Take the distance from the centre of the circle to *C*, and mark off from the centre points *D, E*, &c.
5. Join *CD, DE*, &c., by straight lines, and a *regular hexagon BCDEFG* will be constructed about a given circle *A*.

### Problem 135.

To describe a circle about a given triangle *ABC*.

1. Bisect *any two* of its sides *AB, AC* by lines cutting in *D* (**Pr. 1**).

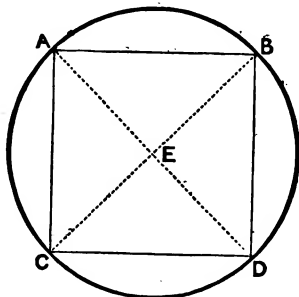
2. From  $D$  as centre, with  $DA$ ,  $DB$ , or  $DC$  as radius, describe a circle; then  $ABC$  is the required circle, described about the given triangle  $ABC$ .



### Problem 136.

To describe a circle about a given square  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw the diagonals  $AD$ ,  $BC$ , intersecting each other in  $E$ .



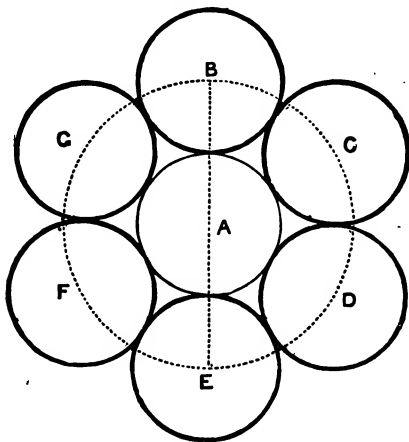
2. From  $E$  as centre, with radius  $EA$ , draw a circle  $ABDC$ , which will be described about the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 137.

To describe six equal circles about, and equal to, a given circle  $A$ , touching each other and the given circle.

1. From the centre  $A$  of the given circle, and with its diameter as radius, describe the circle  $BCDEFG$ .

2. Draw the diameter  $BAE$ , and from  $B$ , with the radius of the given circle, describe a circle touching it.



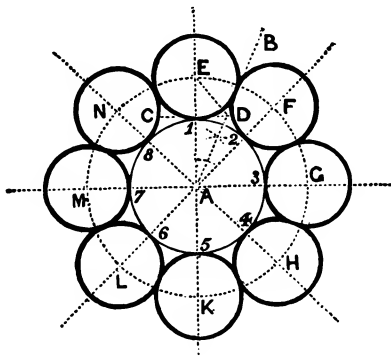
3. From  $B$ , mark off the other centres  $C, D, E$ , &c.  
 4. From these points  $C, D, E$ , &c., with the radius of the given circle, describe the remaining five circles, which will touch each other, and the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 138.

To describe any number of equal circles about a given circle  $A$ , each touching two others, and the given circle. (Say eight in this case).

1. Divide the circumference into eight equal parts, and draw produced radii through the points of division.
2. Bisect one of the angles at the centre, as  $1A2$  (Pr. 4), by a line  $AB$ , and draw a tangent  $CD$  at point 1 (Pr. 54), cutting the bisecting line in  $D$ .
3. Bisect the obtuse angle  $CDB$  (Pr. 4) by a line, which, produced, cuts the radius  $A1$  produced in  $E$ .
4. From  $A$  as centre, with radius  $AE$ , describe the outer circle, cutting the produced radii in  $F, G, H$ , &c.

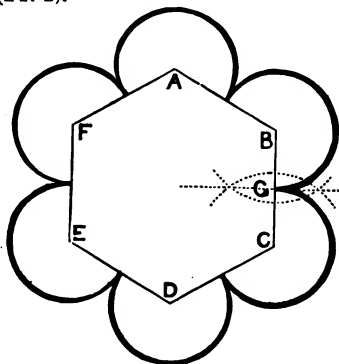
5. From these points,  $E, F, G, \&c$ , with  $E1$  as radius, describe the eight circles, each of which will touch two circles, and the given circle  $A$ .



**Problem 139.**

To construct a foiled figure about any given regular polygon (say a hexagon.)

1.  $ABCDEF$  is the given hexagon. Bisect one side  $BC$  in  $G$  (Pr. 1).



2. With the several angles of the polygon as centres, and radius  $GB$ , describe the six arcs, which form the required hexafoil about the given hexagon  $ABCDEF$ .

## SECTION IX.—PROPORTIONALS.

---

### DEFINITIONS.

1. **Ratio** is the relation that one quantity bears to another of *the same kind*, in respect of magnitude, *i.e.*, by considering what multiple, part, or parts one is of the other. Thus, in comparing 6 with 3, we find that it has a certain magnitude with respect to 3, that is, it contains it *twice*; but in comparing it with 2, we find that it has a different relative magnitude, for it contains it *three times*.

NOTE 1.—The ratio of any two quantities (of the same kind) depends therefore on their *relative*, and not their *absolute*, magnitudes.

NOTE 2.—A “part” must be understood to mean any *aliquot* part (not *any* part).

NOTE 3.—The ratio of  $a$  to  $b$  is usually represented thus— $a : b$ , or sometimes  $\frac{a}{b}$ .

2. “**Proportion** is the similitude of ratios” (Euc. V., Def. 8). Thus, four quantities are said to be *proportionals* when the first is the same multiple, part, or parts of the second that the third is of the fourth. This is usually expressed by saying  $a$  is to  $b$  as  $c$  is to  $d$ , and is thus represented,  $a : b :: c : d$ , or sometimes  $a : b = c : d$ .

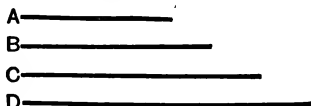
NOTE 1.—The last term ( $d$ ) is called the *fourth* proportional.

NOTE 2.—The quantities  $a$  and  $d$  are called the *extremes*, and  $b$  and  $c$  the *means*.

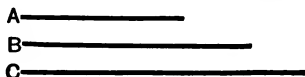
NOTE 3.—When four quantities are proportionals, the product of the extremes is equal to the product of the means, *i.e.*,  $ad = bc$ .

NOTE 4.—When the two means are the *same* quantity—as  $a : b :: b : c$ —the last term ( $c$ ) is called the *third* proportional, and the middle term ( $b$ ) is called a *mean* proportional.

3. A **proportional** in *Practical Geometry* is a line which bears some fixed ratio to one or more given lines. Thus, the four straight lines  $A, B, C, D$  are proportionals,  $D$  being the fourth proportional *greater*, and  $A$  the fourth proportional *less*, to the lines  $A, B, C$ ; and  $B, C, D$ , respectively—



Again, the three straight lines  $A, B, C$  are proportionals,  $C$  being the third proportional *greater*, and  $A$  the third proportional *less* to the lines  $A, B$ ; and  $B, C$ , respectively—

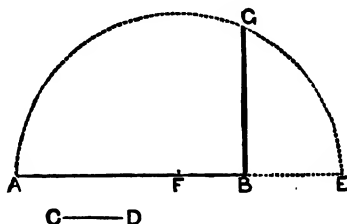


NOTE.— $B$  is a *mean proportional* between the two lines  $A$  and  $C$ .

### Problem 140.

To find a mean proportional between two given lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

1. Produce  $AB$  to  $E$ , and make  $BE$  equal to  $CD$ .

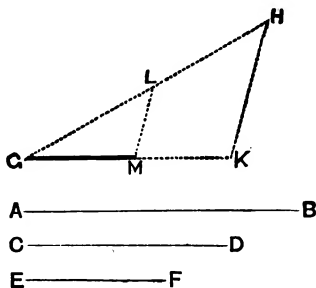


2. Bisect  $AE$  in  $F$  (**Pr. 1**). With centre  $F$ , and radius  $FA$ , describe the semicircle.
3. From  $B$ , raise a perpendicular  $BG$  (**Pr. 2**) to meet the semicircle. Then  $BG$  is the required mean proportional between the two given lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ .

### Problem 141.

To find a fourth proportional to three given straight lines,  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$ , when the required line is less than any of the given lines.

1. Make  $GH$  equal to  $AB$ , and draw  $GK$  equal to  $CD$ , making any angle with  $GH$ .



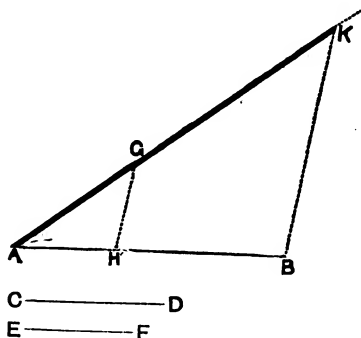
2. Join  $HK$ , and from  $G$ , on the line  $GH$ , cut off  $GL$  equal to  $EF$ .
3. Through point  $L$ , draw  $LM$  parallel to  $HK$  (Pr. 9). Then  $GM$  is the required fourth proportional to the three given straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ,  $EF$ , and less than any of them.

### Problem 142.

To find a fourth proportional to three given straight lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$ , when the required line is greater than any of the given lines.

1. At  $A$  in  $AB$ , draw a line  $AG$  equal to  $CD$ , and at any angle with  $AB$ .
2. From  $A$ , set off  $AH$  equal to  $EF$ , and join  $GH$ .

3. Through  $B$ , draw  $BK$  parallel to  $GH$  (**Pr. 9**), cutting  $AG$  produced in  $K$ . Then  $AK$  is the required fourth proportional to the given lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$ , and greater than any of them.

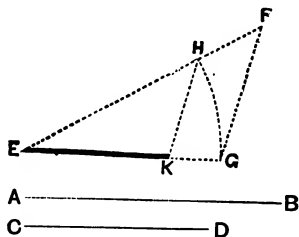


portional to the given lines  $AB$ ,  $CD$ , and  $EF$ , and greater than any of them.

### Problem 143.

To find a third proportional to two given straight lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , when the required line is less than either of the given lines.

1. Make  $EF$  equal to  $AB$ , and draw  $EG$  equal to  $CD$ , making any angle with  $EF$ .



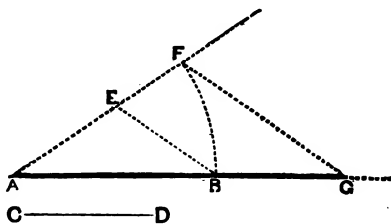
2. Join  $FG$ , and from  $E$ , with radius  $EG$ , cut  $EF$  in  $H$ .
3. Draw  $HK$  parallel to  $FG$  (**Pr. 9**). Then  $EK$  is the required third proportional to the given straight lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , and less than either of them.



**Problem 144.**

To find a third proportional to two given straight lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , when the required line is greater than either of the given lines.

1. At  $A$  in  $AB$ , draw a line  $AE$  equal to  $CD$ , and at any angle with  $AB$ .

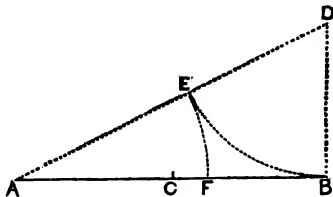


2. Join  $BE$ , and produce  $AE$  and  $AB$  indefinitely.
3. From  $A$  as centre, with  $AB$  as radius, describe an arc cutting  $AE$  produced in  $F$ .
4. Through  $F$ , draw  $FG$  parallel to  $EB$  (Pr. 9), cutting  $AB$  produced in  $G$ . Then  $AG$  is the required third proportional to the given lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , and greater than either of them.

**Problem 145.**

To divide a given straight line  $AB$  into extreme and mean proportion.

1. Bisect  $AB$  in  $C$  (Pr. 1), and from one extremity, say  $B$ , erect a perpendicular  $BD$  equal to  $BC$ .



2. Join  $AD$ , and from the centre  $D$ , with radius  $DB$ , describe the arc  $BE$ .

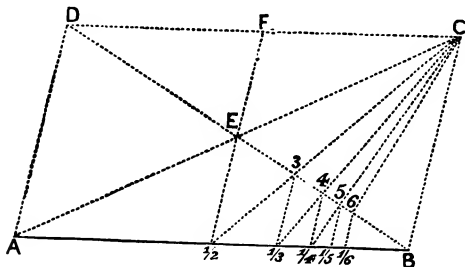
3. From centre  $A$ , and radius  $AE$ , describe the arc  $EF$ .  
Then the given line  $AB$  is divided in extreme and mean proportion in the point  $F$ .

NOTE.—“A straight line is said to be cut in extreme and mean ratio, when the whole is to the greater segment as the greater segment is to the less” (Euc. VI, Def. 3).

### Problem 146.

To divide a given straight line  $AB$  successively into its half, third, fourth, fifth, &c.

1. On  $AB$ , construct any parallelogram  $ABCD$ , and draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , intercepting each other in  $E$ .



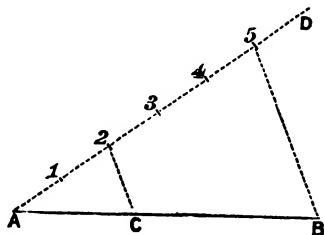
2. Draw line  $F\frac{1}{2}$  parallel to  $AD$  (Pr. 9) cutting  $AB$  in  $\frac{1}{2}$ .  
3. Draw line  $C\frac{1}{3}$ , cutting  $BD$  in 3, and draw line  $3\frac{1}{3}$  parallel to  $AD$ , cutting  $AB$  in  $\frac{1}{3}$ .  
4. Draw line  $C\frac{1}{4}$ , cutting  $BD$  in 4, and through 4 draw line  $4\frac{1}{4}$  parallel to  $AD$ , cutting  $AB$  in  $\frac{1}{4}$ , &c., &c. The divisions thus obtained are the required half, third, fourth, &c., of the given straight line  $AB$ .

### Problem 147.

To divide any given straight line  $AB$  in the point  $C$ , so that  $AC : CB :: 2 : 3$ .

1. From point  $A$ , draw a straight line  $AD$  of indefinite length, and at any angle to  $AB$ .

2. On  $AD$ , mark off *any* two equal distances  $A 1, 1 2$ , and from  $2$ , mark off three *similar* distances to  $5$ ; and join  $5 B$ .

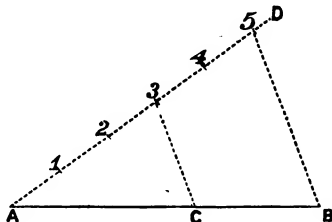


3. Through  $2$ , draw  $2 C$  parallel to  $5 B$  (Pr. 9). Then the given straight line  $AB$  is divided in the point  $C$ , so that  $AC : CB :: 2 : 3$ .

### Problem 148.

To divide any given straight line  $AB$  in the point  $C$ , so that the whole  $AB$  is to one part  $AC$  as  $5 : 3$ .

1. From point  $A$ , draw a straight line  $AD$  of indefinite length, and at any angle to  $AB$ .



2. Take any five equal distances on  $AD$ , and join  $5 B$ .
3. At point  $3$ , draw a line  $3 C$  parallel to  $5 B$  (Pr. 9). Then the given straight line  $AB$  is divided in the point  $C$ , so that  $AB : AC :: 5 : 3$ .

## SECTION X.—SIMILAR FIGURES.

### DEFINITIONS.

1. "**Similar rectilinear figures** are those which have their several angles equal, each to each, and the sides about the equal angles proportionals" (**Euc. VI., Def. 1**).

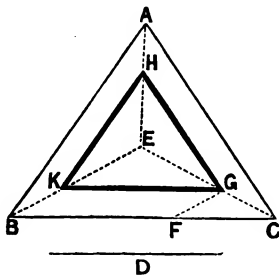
NOTE 1.—The following rectilinear figures are similar, viz. :—*All equilateral triangles, squares, and regular polygons of the same name.*

NOTE 2.—*Other rectilinear figures, e. g., triangles which are not equilateral, trapeziums, and irregular polygons, can be made similar to given ones, as shown in the problems following.*

---

### Problem 149.

To inscribe within and equidistant from the sides of a given triangle  $ABC$ , a similar triangle, one of whose sides is equal to a given line  $D$ .

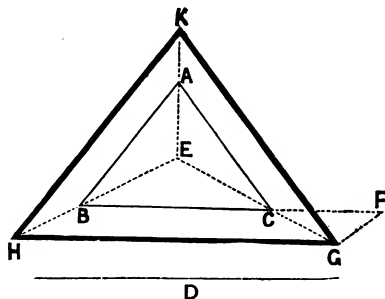


1. Bisect the angles of the given triangle (**Pr. 4**) by lines meeting in  $E$ .

2. Make  $BF$  equal to  $D$ , and through  $F$  draw  $FG$  parallel to  $BE$  (Pr. 9).
3. Through  $G$ , draw lines parallel to the sides of the given triangle, cutting the bisecting lines in  $H$  and  $K$ .
4. Join  $HK$ ; then  $GHK$  is a similar triangle, inscribed within the given triangle  $ABC$ , and having its side  $KG$  equal to the given line  $D$ .

### Problem 150.

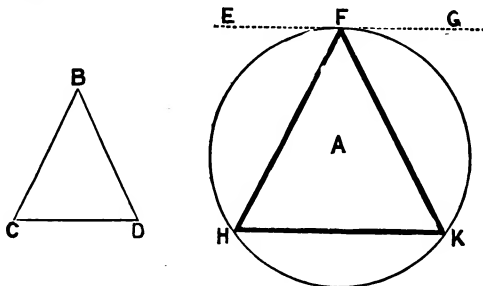
To describe about and equidistant from the sides of a given triangle  $ABC$ , a similar triangle, one of whose sides is equal to a given line  $D$ .



1. Bisect the angles of the given triangle (Pr. 4) by lines meeting in  $E$ .
2. Produce the side  $BC$  to  $F$ , making  $BF$  equal to the given line  $D$ .
3. Through  $F$ , draw  $FG$  parallel to the bisecting line  $BE$ , cutting  $EC$  produced in  $G$ .
4. Through  $G$ , draw the line  $GH$  parallel to  $BC$  (Pr. 9), cutting  $EB$  produced in  $H$ .
5. Through  $G$  and  $H$ , draw the lines  $GK$  and  $HK$ , parallel to the sides of the given triangle  $ABC$ , meeting  $EA$  produced in  $K$ . Then  $GHK$  is a similar triangle described about the given triangle  $ABC$ , and having its side  $HG$  equal to the given line  $D$ .

### Problem 151.

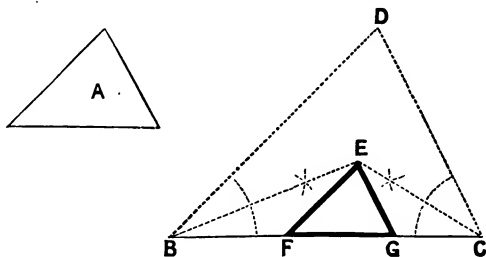
To inscribe a triangle in a given circle  $A$ , similar to a given triangle  $BCD$ .



1. Draw a tangent  $EFG$  at any point  $F$  in the circumference (Pr. 54).
2. From  $F$ , draw  $FH$ , making with  $EF$  an angle equal to  $BCD$  (Pr. 10), and meeting the circumference in  $H$ .
3. From  $F$ , draw  $FK$ , making with  $FG$  an angle equal to  $BDC$ , and meeting the circumference in  $K$ .
4. Join  $HK$ . Then  $FHK$  is a triangle similar to the given triangle  $BCD$ , inscribed within the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 152.

To construct a triangle similar to a given triangle  $A$ , and having its perimeter equal to a given straight line  $BC$ .

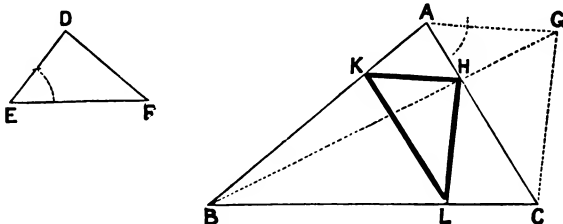


1. On  $BC$ , construct a triangle  $BDC$ , having its angles equal to those of the given triangle  $A$  (Pr. 23).

2. Bisect the angles at  $B$  and  $C$  (Pr. 4) by lines meeting in  $E$ .
3. Through  $E$ , draw  $EF$  and  $EG$  parallel to  $DB$  and  $DC$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $BC$  in  $F$  and  $G$ . Then  $EFG$  is the required similar triangle, having its perimeter  $EF$ ,  $FG$ ,  $GE$  equal to the given straight line  $BC$ .

### Problem 153.

To inscribe a triangle within a given triangle  $ABC$ , and similar to another given triangle  $DEF$ .



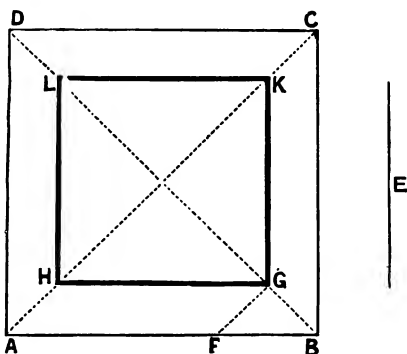
1. On the side  $AC$  of the triangle  $ABC$ , construct a triangle  $ACG$  similar to the given triangle  $DEF$  by measuring the angles at  $E$  and  $F$ .
2. Join  $BG$ , cutting  $AC$  in  $H$ .
3. Through  $H$ , draw  $HK$  parallel to  $AG$  (Pr. 9), and  $HL$  parallel to  $GC$ , meeting  $BC$  in  $L$ .
4. Join  $KL$ . Then  $HKL$  will be the required triangle inscribed within the given triangle  $ABC$ , and similar to the given triangle  $DEF$ .

### Problem 154.

To construct within a given square  $ABCD$ , another square concentric with it, and having its side equal to a given line  $E$ .

1. Draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ ; and on  $AB$  cut off  $AF$  equal to  $E$ .
2. Through  $F$ , draw  $FG$  parallel to  $AC$  (Pr. 9), and through  $G$ , draw  $GH$  parallel to  $AB$ .

3. Through  $G$  and  $H$ , draw  $GK$  and  $HL$  parallel to  $BC$  or  $AD$ .



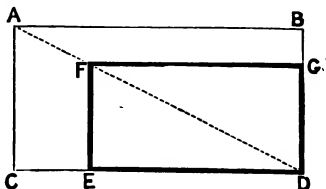
4. Join  $LK$ . Then  $GHLK$  is the required concentric square, and having its side equal to the given line  $E$ .

NOTE.—If it is required to describe a square *about* a given square, make  $AB$  produced equal to the required side, and proceed as in Problem 150.

### Problem 155.

To construct a rectangle, similar to a given rectangle  $ABCD$ , on a part  $ED$  of the side  $CD$  of the given rectangle.

1. Draw the diagonal  $AD$ , and from  $E$ , draw a line  $EF$  parallel to  $AC$  or  $BD$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $AD$  in the point  $F$ .



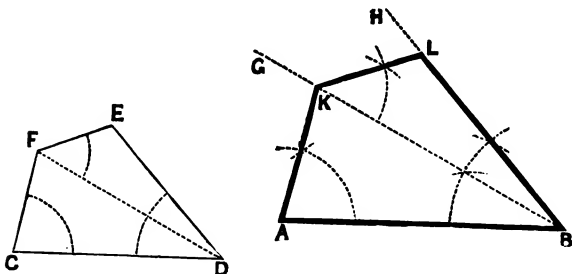
2. From  $F$ , draw a line  $FG$  parallel to  $CD$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $BD$  in the point  $G$ . Then  $DEFG$  is the required rectangle, and is similar to the given rectangle  $ABCD$ .



### Problem 156.

To construct a trapezium on a given line  $AB$ , which shall be similar to a given trapezium  $CDEF$ .

1. At  $B$ , in the given line  $AB$ , make angle  $ABG$  equal to angle  $CDF$  (Pr. 10), and angle  $ABH$  equal to angle  $CDE$ .



2. Make angle  $BAK$  equal to angle  $DCF$ .
3. At  $K$ , make angle  $BKL$  equal to angle  $DFE$ . Then  $AKLB$  will be the required trapezium, constructed on the given line  $AB$ , and similar to the given trapezium  $CDEF$ .

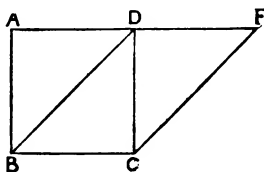
NOTE.—By means of this Problem, any rectilinear figure may be constructed *similar* to another given rectilinear figure, either *greater* or *less*.

## SECTION XI.—EQUIVALENT AREAS.

—————

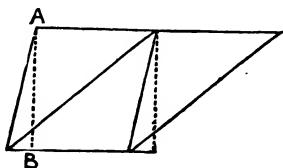
(Before the student enters on the following problems he should thoroughly master the subjoined theorems.)

(A.) “Parallelograms upon the *same* base, and between the *same* parallels, are equal to each other” (in area).—**Euc. I., 35.** *Ex.*  $ABCD, DBCF$ —



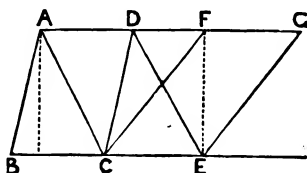
**NOTE 1.**—“Between the same parallels” means *having the same altitude*.

**NOTE 2.**—The altitude must always be *perpendicular* to the base. *Ex.*  $AB$ —



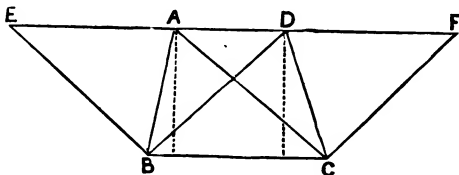
(B.) “Parallelograms upon *equal* bases and between the *same* parallels

are equal to one another" (in area).—**Euc. I., 36.** *Ex.*  $ABCD$  and  $ACED$ , or  $ABCD$  and  $FCEG$ —



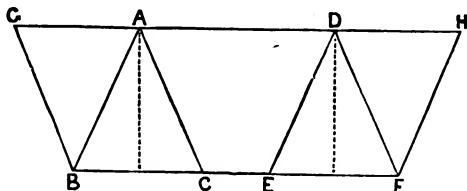
**NOTE.**—The *dotted* line shows the altitude.

- (C.) "Triangles upon the *same* base and between the same parallels are equal to one another" (in area).—**Euc. I., 37.** *Ex.*  $ABC$ ,  $DBC$ —



**NOTE.**—It can be readily seen that  $ABC$  is a half of the parallelogram  $EBCA$ , and  $DBC$  is a half of the parallelogram  $DBCF$ . The parallelograms, standing on the same base  $BC$ , are equal, therefore the triangles are equal, as "the halves of equal things are equal."—**Euc. I., Ax. 7.**

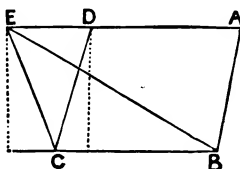
- (D.) "Triangles upon *equal* bases and between the same parallels are equal to one another" (in area).—**Euc. I., 38.** *Ex.*  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ —



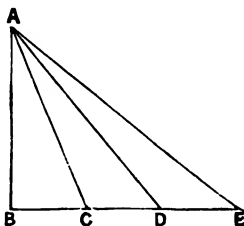
**NOTE.**—It can be readily seen that  $ABC$  is a half of the parallelogram  $GBCA$ , and  $DEF$  is a half of the parallelogram  $DEFH$ . The parallelograms, standing on equal bases  $BC$  and  $EF$ , are equal, therefore the triangles are equal, as "the halves of equal things are equal."—**Euc. I., Ax. 7.**

From the foregoing *notes* the truth of the following theorem will be readily seen :—

- (E.) “If a parallelogram and a triangle be upon the *same* base and between the same parallels, the parallelogram shall be double of the triangle” (in area).—**Euc. I, 41.** *Ex. ABCD and EBC—*

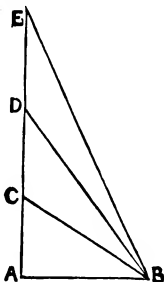


- (F.) “Triangles of the *same* altitude are one to the other (in area) as their bases.”—**Euc. VI, 1.** *Ex. ACE, ABC—*



**NOTE.**—The base  $CE$  being double of the base  $BC$ , the area of  $ACE$  is double of that of the triangle  $ABC$ .

- (G.) Triangles on the *same* base have to one another the ratio that their altitudes have.—*Ex. EAB, CAB—*

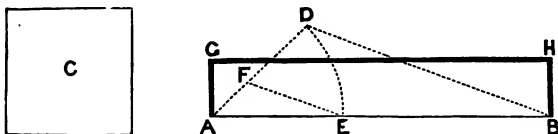


**NOTE.**—The altitude  $EA$  being triple of the altitude  $CA$ , the area of  $EAB$  is triple of that of the triangle  $CAB$ .

### Problem 157.

To construct a **rectangle** on a given line  $AB$  equal in area to a given square  $C$ .

1. From  $A$  in  $AB$ , draw a straight line  $AD$  equal to a side of the given square, and making any angle with  $AB$ .
2. Join  $BD$ , and from  $A$ , with radius  $AD$ , describe an arc  $DE$ , meeting  $AB$  in  $E$ .

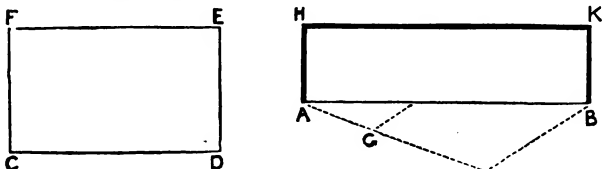


3. Through  $E$ , draw  $EF$  parallel to  $BD$  (Pr. 9). Then  $AF$  is a third proportional less between  $AB$  and a side of the square (Pr. 143), and  $AF$  is equal to the second side of the required rectangle.
4. From  $A$ , raise a perpendicular  $AG$  (Pr. 2) equal to  $AF$ , and complete the required rectangle  $AGHB$ , which will be equal in area to the given square  $C$ .

### Problem 158.

To construct a **parallelogram** on a given base  $AB$  equal in area to a given parallelogram  $CDEF$ .

1. Find  $AG$  the fourth proportional less to  $AB$ ,  $CD$ ,  $CF$  (Pr. 141).

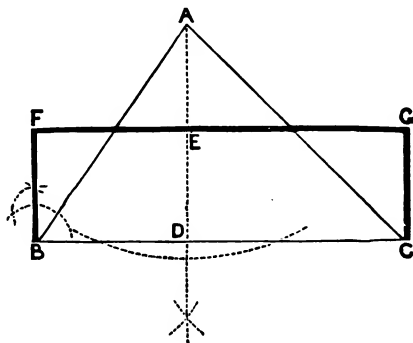


2. At  $A$ , raise the perpendicular  $AH$  equal to  $AG$ , and complete the parallelogram  $AHKB$ . Then the parallelogram  $AHKB$  is equal to the given parallelogram  $CDEF$ .

### Problem 159.

To construct a rectangle equal in area to a given triangle  $ABC$ , on one side  $BC$  of the given triangle.

1. Draw  $AD$ , the altitude of the given triangle (**Pr. 21**), and bisect it in  $E$ . Then  $ED$  is equal to the other side of the required rectangle,  $BC$  being one.



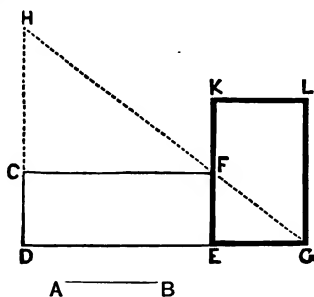
2. At  $B$ , raise a perpendicular  $BF$  (**Pr. 2**) to meet the line of bisection through  $E$  in  $F$ .
3. Make  $FG$  equal to  $BC$ , and join  $CG$ . Then  $BCGF$  is the required rectangle equal to the given triangle  $ABC$ , and constructed on one of its sides  $BC$ .

### Problem 160.

To construct a rectangle on a given line  $AB$  which shall be equal in area to a given rectangle  $CDEF$ .

1. Produce the side  $DE$  beyond  $E$ , and make  $EG$  equal to  $AB$ .
2. Draw a line from  $G$  through  $F$ , to meet  $DC$  produced in  $H$ . Then  $CH$  is equal to the other side of the rectangle, of which  $EG$  is one.

3. From  $E$  in  $EF$  or  $EF$  produced, cut off  $EK$  equal to  $CH$ .

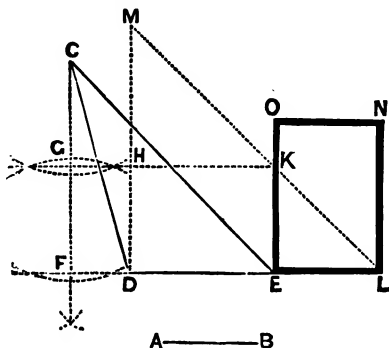


4. Make  $KL$  equal to  $EG$ , and  $GL$  equal to  $EK$ , and join  $KL$  and  $GL$ . Then  $EGLK$  is the rectangle required, and it is constructed on  $EG$ , which is equal to the given line  $AB$ .

### Problem 161.

To construct a rectangle having a given side  $AB$ , equal in area to a given triangle  $CDE$ .

1. Find  $CF$  the altitude of the triangle  $CDE$  (Pr. 21).



2. Bisect  $CF$  in  $G$  (Pr. 1), and produce the line of bisection over  $DE$ , and erect the perpendiculars  $DH$ ,  $EK$ . Then the rectangle  $DEKH$  is equal to the triangle  $CDE$  (Pr. 159).

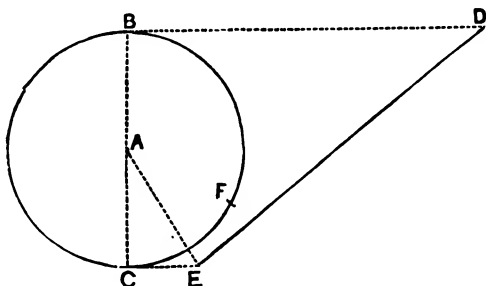
3. Produce  $DE$  beyond  $E$ , and  $DH$  beyond  $H$ ; and make  $EL$  equal to  $AB$ .
4. Draw a line from  $L$  through  $K$ , to meet  $DH$  produced in  $M$ . Then  $HM$  is the second side of the required rectangle  $ELNO$ , and it is constructed on  $EL$ , which is equal to the given line  $AB$ .

NOTE.— $ELNO$  is equal to  $DEKH$  by Problem 160, and is therefore equal to the given triangle  $CDE$ .

### Problem 162.

To draw a straight line equal to half the circumference of a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw a diameter  $BC$ , and from  $B$  draw  $BD$  at right angles to  $BC$  (Pr. 2) and equal to three times the radius of the circle.



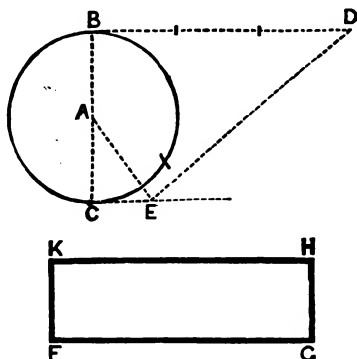
2. From  $C$ , draw a line  $CE$  at right angles to  $BC$ .
3. With the radius of the circle, cut off arc  $CF$  and bisect it.
4. From the centre of the circle, draw  $AE$  through the point of bisection, meeting  $CE$  in  $E$ .
5. Join  $ED$ . Then  $ED$  will be the required straight line equal to half the circumference of the given circle  $A$ .



### Problem 163.

To construct a rectangle equal in area to a given circle  $A$ .

1. By the last problem it will be seen that a rectangle  $FGHK$  can be constructed equal in area to a given



circle by making two of its sides,  $FG$  and  $KH$ , equal to the length of half its circumference as  $ED$ , and the other two sides  $FK$ ,  $GH$ , equal to the radius  $AC$ .

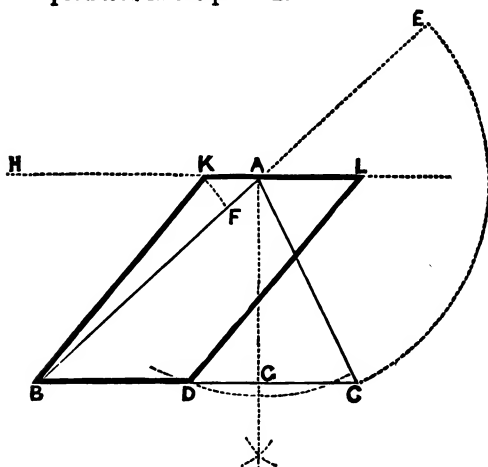
NOTE.—A triangle also can be constructed of the same area as a circle, by making its base equal to half the circumference of the circle, and its altitude equal to twice its radius (= its diameter).

### Problem 164.

To construct a parallelogram equal to any given triangle  $ABC$  both in area and perimeter.

1. Bisect  $BC$  in  $D$  (Pr. 1).
2. Produce  $BA$  beyond  $A$ , and make  $AE$  equal to  $AC$ , and bisect  $BE$  in  $F$ .
3. Find the altitude  $AG$  of the given triangle (Pr. 21), and through  $A$  draw  $AH$  parallel to  $BC$  (Pr. 9).

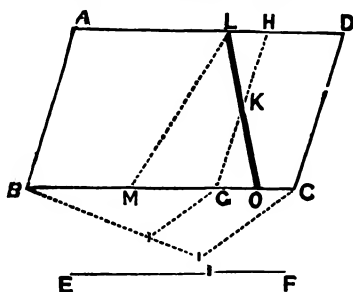
4. From  $B$ , with  $BF$  as radius, describe an arc  $FK$ , cutting  $AH$  in  $K$ ; and from  $D$ , with the same radius, cut  $HA$  produced in the point  $L$ .



5. Join  $BK$ ,  $DL$ . Then the parallelogram  $BDLK$  is equal both in area and perimeter to the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 165.

To divide any parallelogram  $ABCD$  into two parts, proportionate in area to a given divided line  $EF$ , from a point  $O$  in one side.



1. Divide  $BC$  into the same proportions as the given divided line  $EF$  (Pr. 16) in the point  $G$ .

K

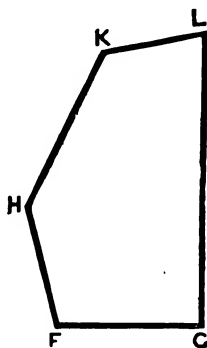
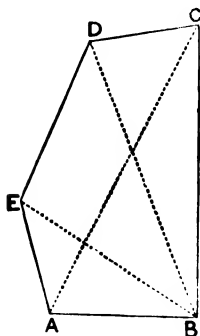
2. Through  $G$ , draw  $GH$  parallel to  $CD$  (Pr. 9), and bisect  $GH$  in  $K$  (Pr. 1).
3. From the given point  $O$ , draw a line through  $K$ , and produce it to meet  $AD$  in  $L$ . Then  $OL$  will divide the given parallelogram  $ABCD$  into two parts proportionate in area to the given line  $EF$ .

NOTE.—To divide the parallelogram into two equal parts from any point, say  $L$ , measure off  $BM$  equal to  $DL$ , and join  $LM$ ; then  $LM$  will divide the parallelogram into two equal parts.

### Problem 166.

To make an irregular polygon equal to a given irregular polygon  $ABCDE$ .

1. Draw a line  $FG$  equal to  $AB$ .
2. With centre  $F$ , and radius  $AE$ , describe an arc, and with centre  $G$ , and radius  $BE$ , cut it in  $H$ .

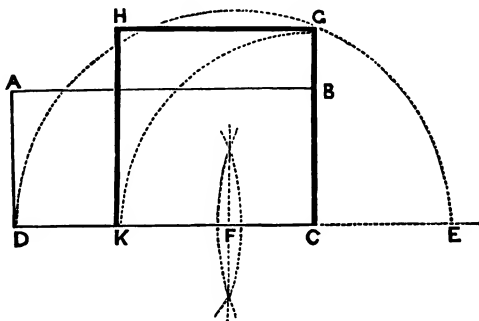


3. With centre  $H$ , and radius  $ED$ , describe an arc, and with centre  $G$ , radius  $BD$ , cut it in  $K$ .
4. With centre  $K$ , and radius  $DC$ , describe an arc, and with centre  $G$ , radius  $BC$ , cut it in  $L$ .
5. Join  $FH$ ,  $HK$ ,  $KL$ , and  $LG$ . Then  $FHKLG$  will be the required irregular polygon.

### Problem 167.

To construct a square equal in area to a given rectangle  $ABCD$ .

1. Produce  $DC$  indefinitely beyond  $C$ , and make  $CE$  equal to  $CB$ .
2. Bisect  $DE$  in  $F$  (Pr. 1), and on  $DE$  describe a semicircle.



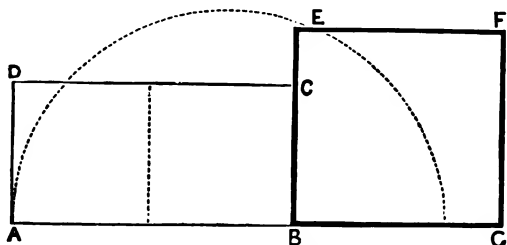
3. Produce the perpendicular  $CB$  to meet the semicircle in  $G$ . Then  $CG$  is a mean proportional between the two adjacent sides  $DC$ ,  $CB$  (Pr. 140); and  $CG$  is one side of the required square.
4. On  $CG$ , complete the required square  $CGHK$  (Pr. 34), which will be equal in area to the given rectangle  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 168.

To construct a square that shall have an area of two square inches (or any number of square inches).

1. Let  $ABCD$  be a rectangle having an area of two square inches, its side  $AB$  being two inches (linear), and  $BC$  one linear inch.
2. Find  $BE$  a mean proportional to the lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$  (Pr. 140).

3. On  $BE$  construct a square  $BEFG$  equal to the rectangle

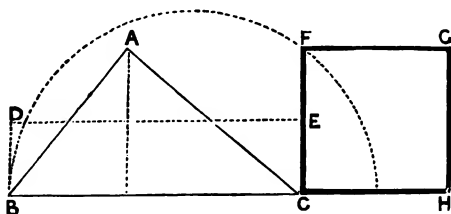


$ABCD$  (Pr. 167); then  $BEFG$  shall have an area of two square inches.

### Problem 169.

To construct a square equal in area to any given triangle,  $ABC$ .

1. Make the rectangle  $DBCE$  equal to the triangle  $ABC$  (Pr. 159).



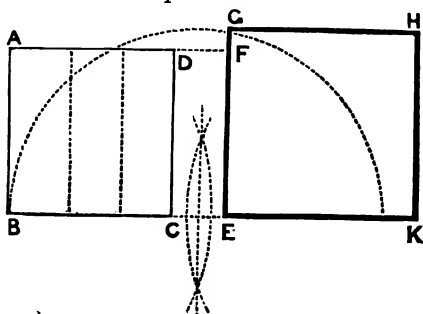
2. Find  $CF$  a mean proportional to the lines  $BC$ ,  $CE$  (Pr. 140). Then  $CF$  is a side of the required square.
3. Complete the square  $CFGH$  (Pr. 34), which will be equal in area to the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 170.

To construct a square having an area one-third greater than that of a given square  $ABCD$ .

1. Divide  $BC$  into three equal parts (Pr. 15), and from the points of division draw lines parallel to  $BA$  or  $CD$  (Pr. 9).

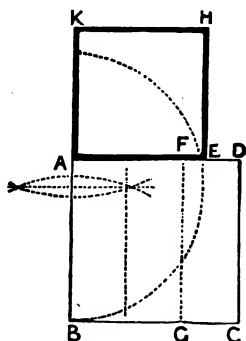
2. Produce  $BC$  beyond  $C$ , and  $AD$  beyond  $D$ , and make  $CE$  and  $DF$  each equal to one-third of  $BC$ .



3. Join  $EF$ ; and find a mean proportional,  $EG$  (Pr. 140), to two adjacent sides of the rectangle  $BEFA$ .
4. Complete the required square of which  $EG$  is a side (Pr. 34). Then the square  $EGHK$  is one-third greater than the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 171.

To construct a square having an area one-third less than that of a given square  $ABCD$ .



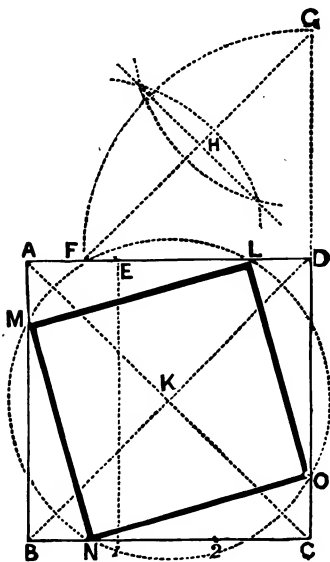
1. Divide  $BC$  into three equal parts (Pr. 15), and from the points of division draw lines parallel to  $BA$  or  $CD$  (Pr. 9).

2. Find a mean proportional  $AE$  (Pr. 140) to the two adjacent sides of the rectangle  $BAFG$ .
3. Complete the required square, of which  $AE$  is one side (Pr. 34). Then the square  $AEHK$  is one-third less than the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 172.

To inscribe within a given square,  $ABCD$ , another square having its angles in the sides of the first, and being proportional in area, as  $\frac{2}{3}$ .

1. Divide  $BC$  into three equal parts (Pr. 15), make  $DE$  equal to  $CE$  and join  $DE$ .
2. Find a mean proportional  $DF$  (Pr. 140), to the two sides  $CD$ ,  $DE$ , of the rectangle  $CDE$ , which will be equal to one side of the required square.



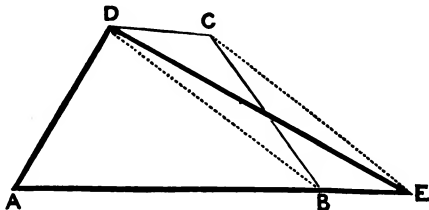
3. Make  $DG$  equal to  $DF$ , and join  $FG$ , which is equal to one diagonal of the required square.

4. Bisect  $FG$  in  $H$  (Pr. 1), and draw the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , cutting in  $K$ .
5. From  $K$ , with radius  $HF$  or  $HG$ , describe a circle cutting the sides of the given square in two points each. Join the alternate points  $L$ ,  $M$ ,  $N$ ,  $O$ , and the required square will be inscribed within the given square  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 173.

To construct a triangle equal in area to a given trapezium,  $ABCD$ .

1. Draw a diagonal  $DB$ , and produce  $AB$  indefinitely to  $E$ .



2. Through  $C$ , draw a line  $CE$  parallel to  $DB$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $AB$  produced in  $E$ .
3. Join  $DE$ ; then  $ADE$  will be a triangle equal in area to the given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

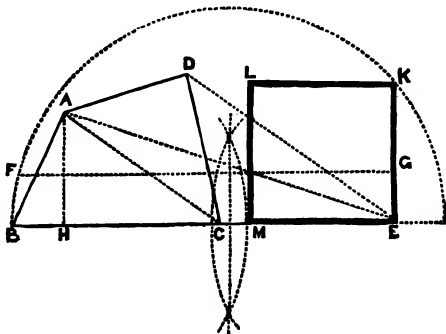
### Problem 174.

To construct a square equal in area to a given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

1. Construct a triangle  $BAE$  equal to the given trapezium (Pr. 173).
2. Construct a rectangle  $BFGE$  on  $BE$  equal to the triangle  $BAE$ , by bisecting the altitude  $AH$  (Pr. 159), producing the line of bisection  $FG$ , making it equal to  $BE$ , and joining  $BF$  and  $EG$ .



3. Construct a square equal in area to the rectangle  $BFG E$ , by finding a mean proportional  $EK$  (Pr. 140) to the two sides  $BE$ ,  $EG$ .

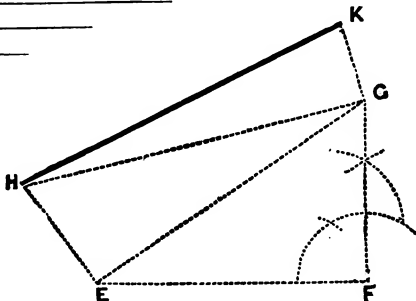


4. Complete the required square  $EKLM$ , of which  $EK$  is one side (Pr. 34). Then the square  $EKLM$  is equal in area to the given trapezium  $ABCD$ .

### Problem 175.

To construct a square equal in area to any number of squares, of which  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ ,  $D$ , &c., are the given sides.

A \_\_\_\_\_  
 B \_\_\_\_\_  
 C \_\_\_\_\_  
 D \_\_\_\_\_



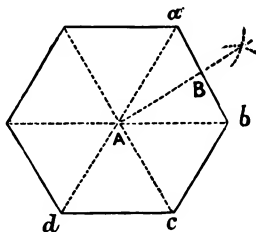
1. Place  $A$  and  $B$  at right angles to each other,  $EF$  being equal to  $A$ , and  $FG$  to  $B$ , and join  $EG$ ; then the square constructed on the hypotenuse  $EG$  is equal to the squares on  $A$ ,  $B$  (Euc. I. 47).

2. At  $E$ , one of the extremities of  $EG$ , draw  $EH$  at right angles to it (**Pr. 2**), and equal to  $C$ , and join  $HG$ ; the square on the hypotenuse  $HG$  is equal to the squares on  $A, B, C$ .
3. At  $G$ , one of the extremities of  $HG$ , draw  $GK$  at right angles to  $HG$  (**Pr. 2**), and equal to  $D$ , and join  $HK$ . Then  $HK$  will be a side of the required square, equal in area to the squares on the given sides  $A, B, C, D$ .

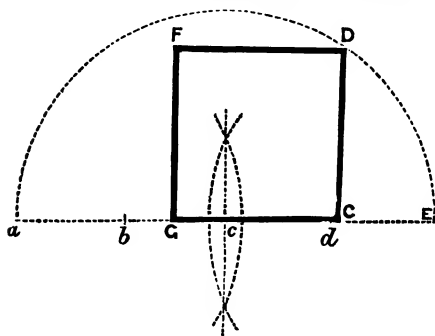
NOTE.—In this way a square may be constructed equal to any number of given squares.

### Problem 176.

To construct a square equal in area to any given regular polygon  $A$ . (Say a hexagon.)



1. Resolve the given hexagon into the same number of equal triangles as the polygon has sides.



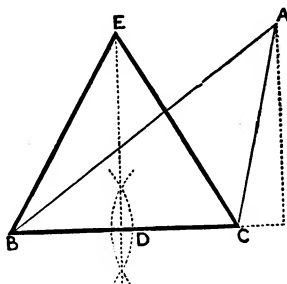
2. Draw an altitude to one of the sides as  $AB$  in the triangle  $Aab$  (**Pr. 21**).



**Problem 178.**

To construct an isosceles triangle equal in area to a given triangle  $ABC$  on one of its sides,  $BC$ .

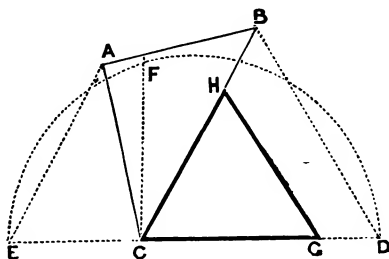
1. Bisect  $BC$  in  $D$  (Pr. 1), and produce the line of bisection, making  $DE$  equal to the altitude of the given triangle  $ABC$ .



2. Join  $EB$ ,  $EC$ ; then the isosceles triangle  $EBC$  is equal to the given triangle  $ABC$ .

**Problem 179.**

To construct an equilateral triangle equal to a given triangle  $ABC$ , which is not equilateral.



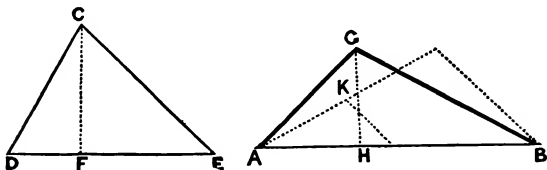
1. On  $BC$ , a side of the given triangle, construct an equilateral triangle  $BCD$  (Pr. 18).

- Through  $A$ , draw a line  $AE$  parallel to  $BC$  (Pr. 9), and meeting  $DC$  produced in  $E$ .
- Find a mean proportional to  $DC$  and  $CE$  (Pr. 140) thus—on  $DE$  describe a semicircle, and at  $C$  raise a perpendicular  $CF$  to  $ED$  (Pr. 2). Line  $CF$  is a mean proportional to  $DC$  and  $CE$ , and will be the side of an equilateral triangle equal in area to the given triangle, as  $CGH$ .

### Problem 180.

To construct a triangle on a given base  $AB$ , equal in area to a given triangle  $CDE$ .

- Let fall upon  $DE$  the perpendicular  $CF$  (Pr. 3). The fourth proportional less to the three lines  $AB$ ,  $DE$ ,  $CF$ , will be the perpendicular height of the required triangle.



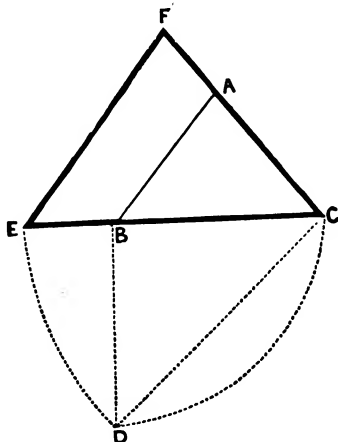
- Find  $AK$  this fourth proportional less (Pr. 141).
- From any point  $H$  in the base  $AB$  raise a perpendicular  $HG$  equal to  $AK$ .
- Join  $GA$ ,  $GB$ ; then the triangle  $GAB$  will be equal in area to the given triangle  $CDE$ .

### Problem 181.

To construct a triangle similar to a given triangle  $ABC$ , but of twice its area.

- Draw  $BD$  at right angles to  $BC$  (Pr. 2), and equal to it.
- Join  $DC$ . Then the square on  $DC$  is equal to the squares on  $DB$ ,  $BC$  (Euc. I. 47), and therefore double the square on  $BC$ .
- Produce  $CB$  to  $E$ , making  $CE$  equal to  $CD$ ; then the square on  $EC$  is double the square on  $BC$ .

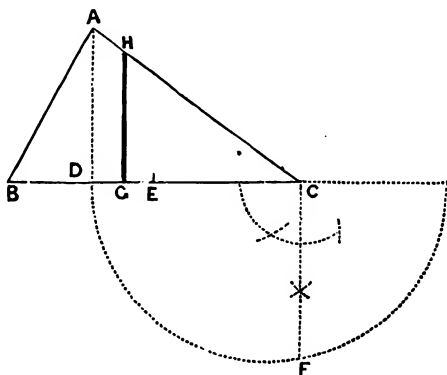
4. From  $E$ , draw  $EF$  parallel to  $BA$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $CA$



produced in  $F$ . Then the triangle  $FEC$  is similar to the given triangle  $ABC$ , and is twice its area.

### Problem 182.

To bisect any triangle  $ABC$  by a line drawn perpendicular to one of its sides  $BC$ .



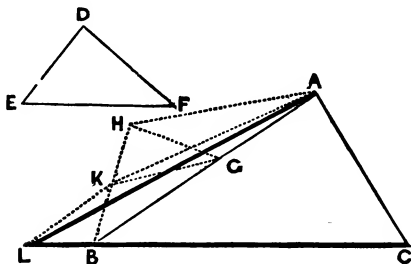
1. From  $A$  drop a perpendicular  $AD$  on  $BC$  (Pr. 3), and bisect  $BC$  in  $E$ .

2. Find  $CF$  a mean proportional between  $CD$  and  $CE$  (Pr. 140); and make  $CG$  equal to  $CF$ .
3. Through  $G$ , draw  $GH$  parallel to the altitude  $AD$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $AC$  in  $H$ . Then  $GH$  will divide the given triangle  $ABC$  into two equal areas.

### Problem 183.

To construct a triangle equal in area to any two dissimilar triangles  $ABC$  and  $DEF$ .

1. From  $B$ , in  $AB$ , cut off  $BG$  equal to  $EF$ , and on  $BG$  construct a triangle  $BGH$  equal to the triangle  $DEF$ .
2. Join  $AH$ , and through  $G$  draw  $GK$  parallel to  $AH$  (Pr. 9), and join  $AK$ .



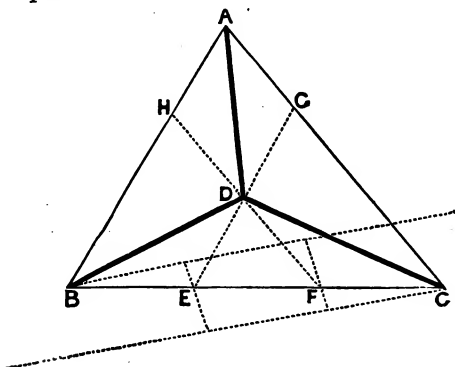
3. From  $K$  draw a line  $KL$  parallel to  $AB$ , cutting  $CB$  produced in  $L$ .
4. Join  $AL$ . The triangle  $ALC$  will then be equal to the trapezium  $AKBC$  (Pr. 173), and equal in area to the two dissimilar triangles  $ABC$ ,  $DEF$ .

### Problem 184.

To divide any given triangle  $ABC$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case three), by lines drawn from each angle  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , to a point  $D$  within the triangle.

1. Divide one side  $BC$  into three equal parts (Pr. 15) in the points  $E$ ,  $F$ .

2. Through  $E$  draw  $EG$  parallel to  $AB$  (Pr. 9), and through  $F$  draw  $FH$  parallel to  $AC$ , cutting  $EG$  in the required point  $D$ .

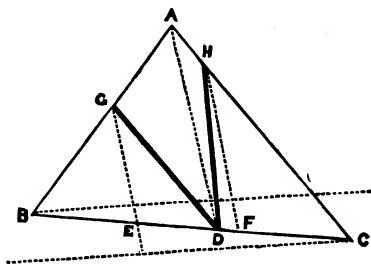


3. From each of the angles  $A, B, C$ , draw lines to the point  $D$ . Then  $AD, BD,$  and  $CD$  will divide the given triangle  $ABC$  into the required number of parts, equal in area.

NOTE.—The same method is to be followed for dividing the triangle into any number of *proportionate* parts.

### Problem 185.

To divide any given triangle  $ABC$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case three), by lines drawn from a given point  $D$  in one of its sides.



1. From the given point  $D$  draw a line to the opposite angle at  $A$ .

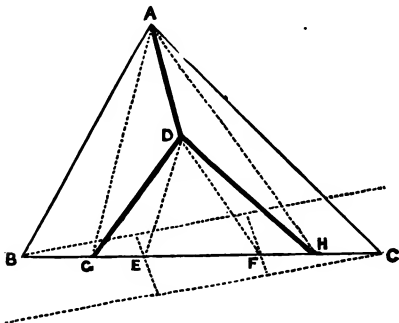


2. Divide the side  $BC$ , that in which the given point is, into three equal parts (Pr. 15) in the points  $E, F$ .
3. Through  $E$  and  $F$  draw  $EG$  and  $FH$  parallel to  $AD$  (Pr. 9).
4. Join  $DG, DH$ ; which lines will divide the given triangle  $ABC$  into the required number of parts, equal in area.

### Problem 186.

To divide any given triangle  $ABC$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case three) by lines drawn from a given point  $D$  within the triangle.

1. Divide one side  $BC$  into three equal parts (Pr. 15) in the points  $E, F$ , and join  $DE, DF$ .
2. From  $A$ , draw a line  $AG$  parallel to  $DE$  (Pr. 9); and



from  $A$  draw a line  $AH$  parallel to  $DF$ , and meeting  $BC$  in  $H$ .

3. Join  $DA, DG, DH$ ; which lines will divide the given triangle  $ABC$  into the required number of parts, equal in area.

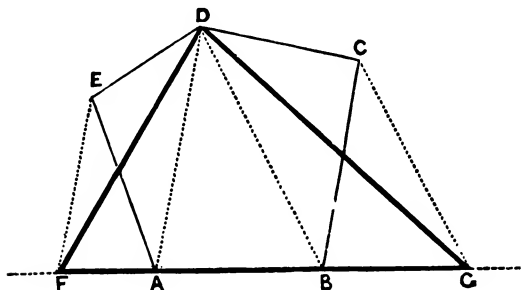
NOTE.—The same method is to be followed for dividing the triangle into any number of proportionate parts.

### Problem 187.

To convert any rectilinear figure  $ABCDE$  into a triangle of equal area.

1. Produce any side  $AB$  both ways indefinitely.

- Join  $DA, DB$ ; through  $E$  draw  $EF$  parallel to  $DA$ , and through  $C$ , draw  $CG$  parallel to  $DB$ .



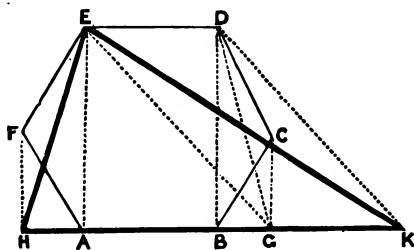
- Join  $DF, DG$ . Then  $DFG$  will be the required triangle, and it is equal in area to the given rectilinear figure  $ABCDE$ .

### Problem 188.

To reduce any rectilinear figure to an equivalent figure having a less number of sides (e.g., a hexagon to a triangle).

Let  $ABCDEF$  be the given hexagon.

- Join  $DB$ , and through  $C$  draw  $CG$  parallel to  $DB$  (Pr. 9), cutting  $AB$  produced in  $G$ .



- Join  $DG$ ; then the triangle  $DGB$  is equal to the triangle  $DCB$ , and therefore the five-sided figure  $AGDEF$  is equal to the given hexagon  $ABCDEF$ .
- Join  $EA$ , and through  $F$  draw  $FH$  parallel to  $EA$  (Pr. 9), cutting  $BA$  produced in  $H$ .

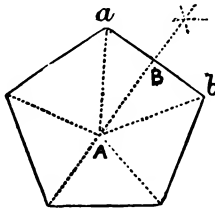
L

4. Join  $EH$ ; then the triangle  $EFA$  is equal to the triangle  $EHA$ , and therefore the quadrilateral  $EHGD$  is equal to the five-sided square  $AGDEF$ .
5. Join  $EG$ , and through  $D$  draw  $DK$  parallel to  $EG$  (Pr. 9), meeting  $HG$  produced in  $K$ .
6. Join  $EK$ ; then the triangle  $EKG$  is equal to the triangle  $EDG$ , and therefore the triangle  $EHK$  equals the quadrilateral  $EHGD$ , or the given hexagon  $ABCDEF$ .

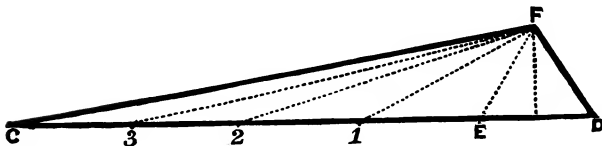
### Problem 189.

To construct a triangle equal in area to any given regular polygon  $A$  (say a pentagon).

1. Resolve the given pentagon into the same number of equal triangles as the polygon has sides.



2. Draw an altitude to one of the sides as  $AB$  in the triangle  $Aab$  (Pr. 21).
3. Set off the length of the five bases in one line  $CD$ , and on one of them,  $ED$ , construct a triangle  $FED$  equal to the triangle  $Aab$  (Pr. 180), and having the same altitude.

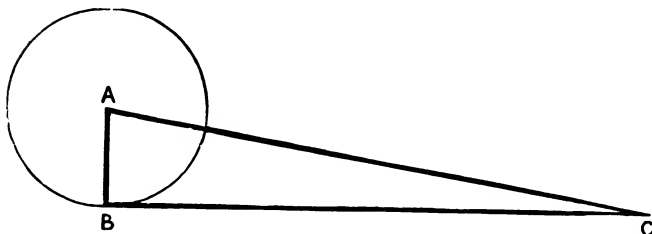


4. From the point  $F$  draw  $F1, F2, F3, F4$ ; then the triangle  $FCD$  is equal in area to the given polygon  $A$ .

**Problem 190.**

To construct a triangle equal in area to any given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw any radius  $AB$ , and from  $B$  draw  $BC$  perpendicular to  $AB$  (**Pr. 2**), and equal in length to the circumference of the circle.

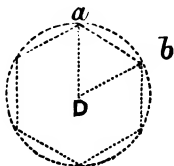


2. Join  $AC$ , and the triangle  $ABC$  is equal in area to the given circle  $A$ .

**Problem 191.**

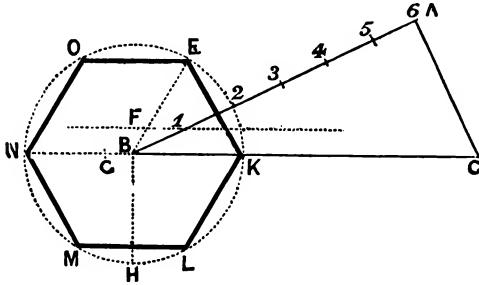
To construct any regular polygon (say a hexagon), equal in area to any given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Divide a side  $BA$  of the given triangle into as many equal parts as the required polygon has sides (six) (**Pr. 15**).



2. Produce  $CB$  indefinitely beyond  $B$ , and through point 1 draw a line parallel to  $BC$  (**Pr. 9**).
3. Construct a hexagon  $D$  (**Pr. 64**), and draw lines from the centre to two of the angles, as  $Da, Db$ .
4. At  $B$  in  $CB$  make angle  $CBE$  equal to  $aDb$  (**Pr. 10**), the line  $BE$  cutting the parallel to  $BC$  in  $F$ .
5. On  $CB$  produced make  $BG$  equal to  $BF$ .

6. Find a mean proportional  $BH$  to the two segments  $CB$ ,  $BG$  (Pr. 140), which is equal to the radius of the circle described from  $B$ .

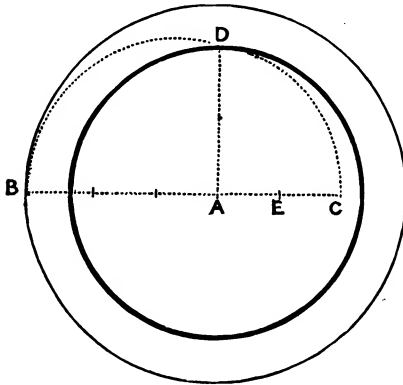


7. Within this circle inscribe the required hexagon  $EKLMO$ , which is equal in area to the given triangle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 192.

To construct a circle two-thirds the area of a given circle  $A$ .

1. Draw a radius  $AB$ , and divide it into three equal parts (Pr. 15).



2. Produce it to  $C$ , making  $AC$  equal to two of the equal parts.

3. Find  $AD$  the mean proportional between  $AB$  and  $AC$  (**Pr. 140**), which is the radius of the required circle.
4. From centre  $A$ , with radius  $AD$ , describe the inner circle, whose area is two-thirds of that of the given circle  $A$ .

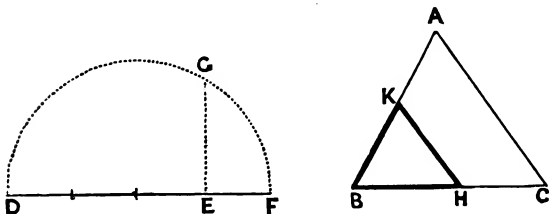
NOTE.—In the same manner, if the required circle is to be one-third of the given circle, mark off  $AE$  equal to one-third of  $AB$ . Then find the mean proportional between  $AB$  and  $AE$ , which will be the radius of the required circle.

### Problem 193.

To construct any rectilinear figure, whose area shall have a given proportion to any other rectilinear figure of the same kind (say one-third).

(A) To construct a triangle one-third of a given triangle  $ABC$ .

1. Draw  $DE$  equal to the side  $BC$ . As one-third the area is required, produce  $DE$ , making  $EF$  equal to one-third of  $DE$ .
2. Find  $EG$  a mean proportional to  $DE$ ,  $EF$  (**Pr. 140**). Then  $EG$  is equal to a side of the required triangle.

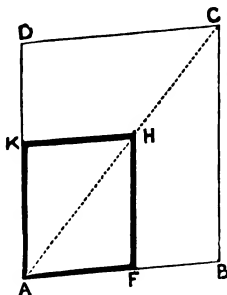


3. Make  $BH$  equal to  $EG$ , and draw  $HK$  parallel to  $AC$ . Then  $BHK$  will be the required triangle, and it is one-third of the given triangle  $ABC$ .

(B) To construct a parallelogram one-third of a given parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

1. As in case A, find  $EG$  the mean proportional (**Pr. 140**).
2. On  $AB$ , mark off  $AF$  equal to  $EG$ , and join  $AC$ .

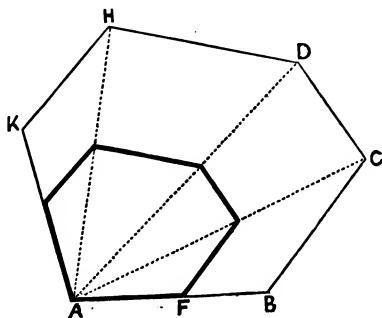
3. Draw  $FH$ ,  $HK$ , parallel to  $BC$ ,  $CD$ . Then  $AFHK$  will



be the required parallelogram, and it is one-third of the given parallelogram  $ABCD$ .

(C) To construct an **irregular rectilinear figure** one-third of a given irregular rectilinear figure  $ABCDHK$ .

1. As in case **A**, find  $EG$  the mean proportional (**Pr. 140**).
2. On  $AB$ , mark off  $AF$  equal to  $EG$ , and from  $A$ , draw  $AC$ ,  $AD$ ,  $AH$ .



3. From  $F$ , commence drawing a series of lines parallel to the sides of the given figure, and the smaller rectilinear figure will be constructed.

**NOTE.**—As in the case of the circle, if the figures required be any other proportion of the given figures, e.g., *three-fifths*; make  $EF$  *three-fifths* of  $DE$ , and find the mean proportional as before. That will be equal to a side of the figure required.

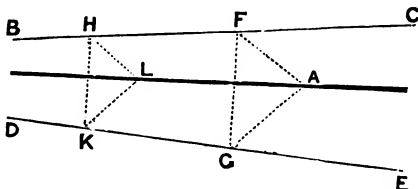
## SECTION XII.

### MISCELLANEOUS PROBLEMS.

#### Problem 194.

*Through a given point  $A$ , to draw a line which would, if produced, pass through the angular point towards which the two given lines  $BC$ ,  $DE$  converge.*

1. Draw any convenient line  $FG$ , and join  $FA$ ,  $GA$ .
2. Draw any line  $HK$  parallel to  $FG$  (Pr. 9).



3. Through  $H$  and  $K$ , draw  $HL$  and  $KL$  parallel to  $FA$  and  $GA$  (Pr. 9), meeting each other in  $L$ .
4. Through  $A$  and  $L$ , draw  $AL$ , which produced is the convergent line required.

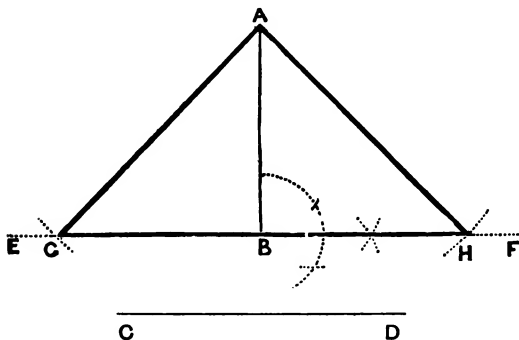
#### Problem 195.

*To construct an isosceles triangle, having given its altitude  $AB$ , and  $CD$  the length of its equal sides.*

1. Through  $B$ , draw  $EF$  of unlimited length, and at right angles to  $AB$  (Pr. 2).



2. From centre  $A$ , with the distance  $CD$ , cut  $EF$  in  $G$  and  $H$ .

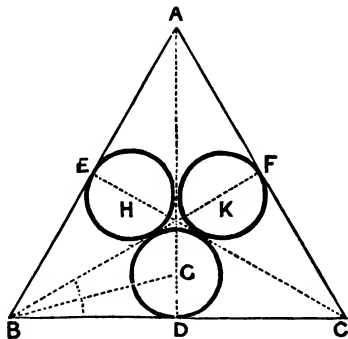


3. Join  $AG, AH$ . Then  $AGH$  will be the required isosceles triangle, having the altitude  $AB$  and each of its equal sides equal to the given line  $CD$ .

### Problem 196.

To inscribe **three circles** in a given equilateral triangle  $ABC$ , each touching the other two, and **one side** of the triangle.

1. Bisect each side of the triangle (Pr. 1), and draw the lines  $DA, EC, FB$ .

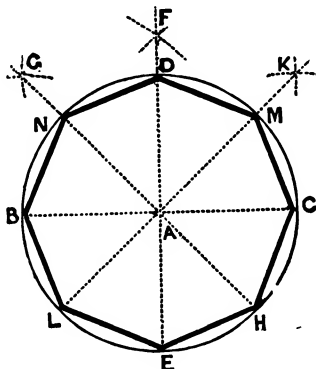


2. Bisect the angle  $FBC$ , by a line cutting  $AD$  in  $G$  (Pr. 4).  
 3. From  $E$  and  $F$ , cut off  $EH$  and  $FK$  equal to  $GD$ ; then  $G, H, K$ , are the centres of the required circles, and  $GD$  the radius.

### Problem 197.

To construct a regular octagon within a given circle  $A$ , making one of its angles coincide with a given point  $B$ .

1. From  $B$ , draw a diameter  $BC$ .



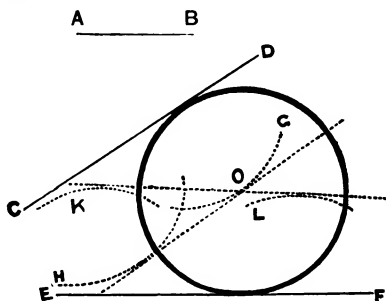
2. Draw the diameter  $DE$  at right angles to  $BC$ , by using  $B$  and  $C$  as centres, and describing arcs in  $F$ , and joining  $FA$ .
3. Bisect angle  $DAB$  (Pr. 4) by  $GH$ , also bisect angle  $DAC$  by line  $KL$ .
4. Join  $BN, ND, DM, \&c.$ , and the required octagon will be inscribed within the given circle  $A$ .

### Problem 198.

To describe a circle of a given radius  $AB$  which shall be tangential to any two given converging lines  $CD, EF$ .

1. With any two points on  $CD$ , as centres, and radius  $AB$ , describe arcs  $G$  and  $H$ .
2. With any two points on  $EF$ , as centres, and radius  $AB$ , describe arcs  $K$  and  $L$ .

3. Draw lines tangential to each pair of arcs (**Pr. 56**); and  $O$ , their point of intersection, is the centre of the required circle.

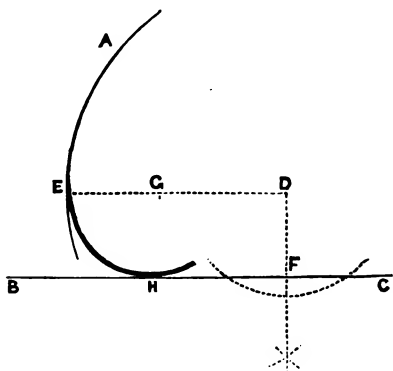


4. With centre  $O$ , and radius  $AB$ , describe the required circle, which shall be tangential to the given converging lines  $CD$ ,  $EF$ .

### Problem 199.

To describe an arc, which shall be tangential to a given arc  $A$ , and a given line  $BC$ .

1.  $D$  is the centre of the given arc  $A$ .



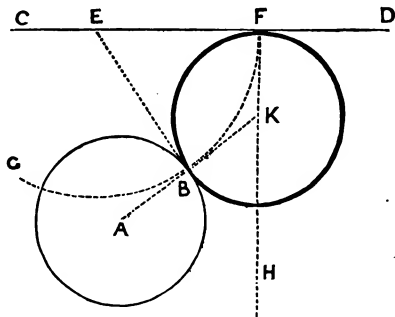
2. Through  $D$ , draw  $DE$  parallel to  $BC$  (**Pr. 9**).  
 3. From  $D$ , draw  $DF$  perpendicular to  $BC$  (**Pr. 2**).

4. On  $ED$ , mark off  $EG$  equal to  $DF$ .
5. With centre  $G$ , and radius  $GE$ , describe the required arc  $EH$ , which will be tangential to the given arc  $A$ , and given line  $BC$ .

### Problem 200.

To draw a circle, which shall touch a given circle  $A$  in a given point  $B$ , and also a given line  $CD$ .

1. Find  $A$ , the centre of the given circle (Pr. 45), and join  $AB$ .
2. Draw the tangent  $BE$  (Pr. 54), meeting  $CD$  in  $E$ .



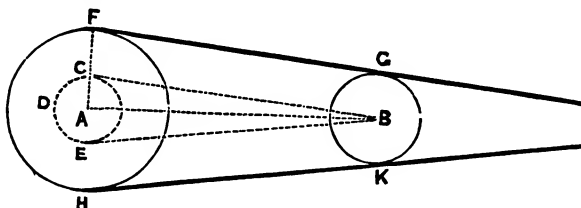
3. From  $E$  as centre, with radius  $EB$ , describe the arc  $FBG$ , meeting  $CD$  in  $F$ .
4. From  $F$ , draw  $FH$  perpendicular to  $CD$  (Pr. 2), and produce  $AB$  to meet the perpendicular in  $K$ ; then  $K$  is the centre of the required circle, of which  $KF$  is the radius.

### Problem 201.

To draw one or two exterior tangents common to two given circles  $A$  and  $B$ .

1. Find the centres of the given circles  $A$  and  $B$  (Pr. 45), and join them.
2. From the centre  $A$ , with a radius equal to the difference between the radii of the given circles, describe the circle  $CDE$ .

3. From the centre  $B$ , draw  $BC$  a tangent to the circle  $CDE$  (Pr. 55).
4. Join  $AC$ , and produce it to cut the given circle in  $F$ .

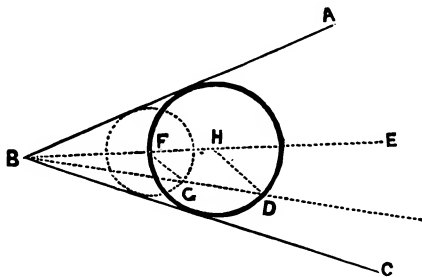


5. Through  $F$ , draw  $FG$  parallel to  $CB$  (Pr. 9), then  $FG$  is a tangent common to the given circles  $A$  and  $B$ . In the same manner,  $HK$  may be drawn, another tangent common to the given circles  $A$  and  $B$ .

### Problem 202.

To inscribe a circle in a given angle  $ABC$ , which shall pass through a given point  $D$ .

1. Bisect the angle  $ABC$  by the line  $BE$  (Pr. 4).
2. In  $BE$ , take any convenient point  $F$ , and with  $F$  as centre, describe a circle, touching the lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$ .

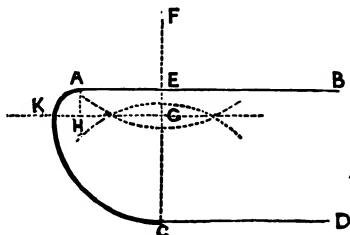


3. Join  $BD$ , cutting the circle in  $G$ , and draw the radius  $FG$ .
4. Through  $D$ , draw  $DH$  parallel to  $FG$  (Pr. 9), then  $H$  is the centre of the required circle.
5. From centre  $H$ , with radius  $DH$ , inscribe the required circle in the given angle  $ABC$ .

### Problem 203.

To join the extremities of any two given parallel lines  $AB, CD$ , by a pair of arcs, which shall touch each other, and the ends of the lines tangentially.

1. At  $C$ , erect a perpendicular  $CE$  (Pr. 2), and produce it to  $F$ , making  $EF$  equal to  $EA$ .



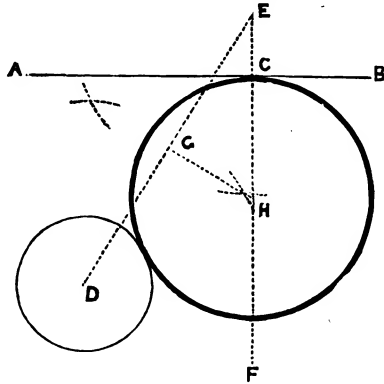
2. Bisect  $CF$  in  $G$  (Pr. 1), and through  $G$ , draw a line parallel to  $AB$  (Pr. 9) of indefinite length towards the left.
3. Mark off  $GH$  equal to  $AE$ . With centre  $H$ , and radius  $HA$ , describe the arc  $AK$ .
4. With centre  $G$ , and radius  $GK$ , describe the arc  $KC$ . Then the given parallel lines  $AB, CD$ , will be joined by the required pair of arcs  $AK, KC$ .

### Problem 204.

To construct a circle which shall touch a given line  $AB$  in the given point  $C$ , and also a given smaller circle  $D$ .

1. Through the point  $C$ , draw a perpendicular  $EF$  (Pr. 2) of unlimited length.
2. Find the radius of the given circle  $D$ , and from  $EF$  cut off  $CE$  equal to it, and join  $DE$ .
3. Bisect  $DE$  in the point  $G$  (Pr. 1), and draw  $GH$  perpendicular to it, meeting  $EF$  in  $H$ ; then  $H$  is the centre of the required circle.

4. From  $H$ , with radius  $HC$ , describe the required circle

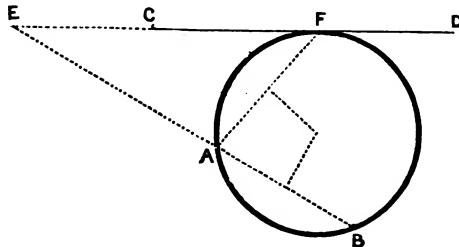


which will touch the given line  $AB$  in the given point  $C$ , and also the given smaller circle  $D$ .

### Problem 205.

To construct a **circle** which shall pass through **two given points**  $A$  and  $B$ , and shall touch a given line  $CD$ .

1. Draw the straight line  $BA$ , and produce it to meet  $DC$  produced in  $E$ .
2. Find a mean proportional between the lines  $BE$  and  $EA$  (Pr. 140), and from  $E$  on the line  $ED$ , mark off  $EF$



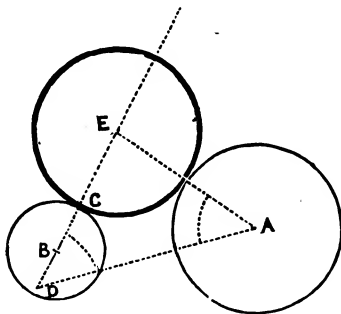
equal to the mean proportional; then  $F$  is the point in the given line  $CD$ , through which the required circle will touch it.

3. Through the three points  $B, A, F$ , describe the required circle  $BAF'$  (Pr. 46).

### Problem 206.

To draw a circle externally tangential to two given unequal circles  $A$  and  $B$ , and touching one of them in a given point  $C$ .

1. Find the centres of the given circles  $A$  and  $B$  (Pr. 45).
2. Join  $BC$ ; and produce it indefinitely.
3. On  $BC$  produced, mark off  $CD$  equal to the radius of the larger circle  $A$ , and join  $AD$ .



4. From  $A$ , draw  $AE$  to meet  $DC$  produced in  $E$ , and making with  $DA$  an angle equal to  $ADE$  (Pr. 10); then  $E$  is the centre of the required circle.
5. From centre  $E$ , with radius  $EC$ , describe the required circle, which will be tangential to the two given circles  $A$  and  $B$ .

### Problem 207.

To change any given rectilinear figure  $ABC$  into another rectilinear figure of equal area, but having one side more, &c.

Let the given figure  $ABC$  be a triangle.

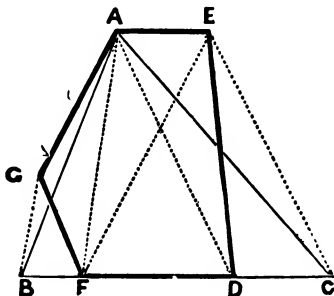
1. Assume a point,  $D$ , as one of the angles of the four-sided figure to be obtained, and join  $AD$ .
2. Draw a line from  $A$  in the same direction as  $DC$  and parallel to it (Pr. 9).



3. Draw a line from  $C$  parallel to  $AD$ , and meeting  $AE$  in  $E$ ; and join  $DE$ . Then the four-sided figure  $BAED$  will be equal in area to the given triangle  $ABC$ .

Next,

1. Assume a point,  $F$ , as one of the angles of the five-sided figure to be obtained, and join  $AF$ .



2. Draw a line from  $B$  parallel to  $AF$  (Pr. 9), and join  $EF$ .  
 3. Draw a line from  $A$  parallel to  $EF$ , and meeting  $BC$  in  $G$ , and join  $GF$ . Then the five-sided figure  $FGAED$  will be also equal in area to the triangle  $ABC$ .

NOTE.—In the same manner, a figure of six, seven, &c., sides may be obtained, by assuming a new angular point in each case.

### Problem 208.

To make a reduced copy of any given figure  $ABCD$ , making the given line  $EF$  correspond to  $AB$ .

1. Make angle  $FEG$  equal to  $BAD$  (Pr. 10), and angle  $EFG$  equal to  $ABD$ . Then  $EH$  will have a correct proportion to  $AD$ .
2. On the curve  $CB$ , mark any number of points, say two  $K, L$ .
3. From  $C, K, L$ , drop perpendiculars on  $AB$  (Pr. 3) to points 1, 2, 3.
4. Draw  $KM, LN$ , parallel to  $AB$  (Pr. 9).
5. Divide  $EF, EH$ , proportionally to the divisions on  $AB, AD$  (Pr. 16), as shown by the dotted lines in the figure.



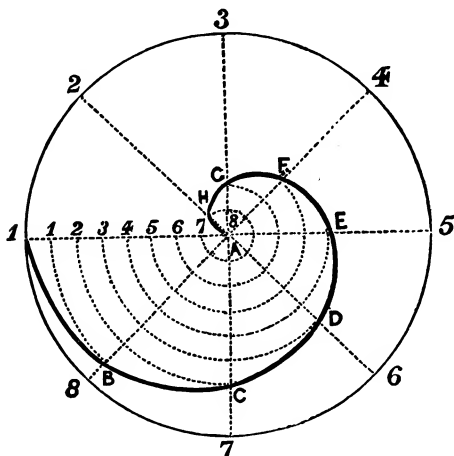
2. From  $C$ , as centre, with any radius, describe the semicircle  $D1E$ .
3. From  $D$  as centre, with radius  $DE$ , describe the semicircle  $E2F$ .
4. From  $C$  as centre, with radius  $CF$ , describe the semicircle  $F3G$ .
5. From  $D$  as centre, with radius  $DG$ , describe the semicircle  $G4H$ , &c., &c.

NOTE.—In this manner, a common spiral may consist of any number of semicircles, the points  $C$  and  $D$  being alternately the centres of the required semicircles.

### Problem 210.

To construct a spiral of one revolution.

1. Divide the given circle  $A$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case eight), and draw radii to each point of division 1, 2, 3, &c.



2. Divide one of the radii, say  $A1$ , into the same number of equal parts (Pr. 15), and number them from the circumference 1, 2, 3, &c.
3. From  $A$ , with radii  $A1, A2, A3, \text{ \&c.}$ , describe arcs on  $A1$ ,

cutting the corresponding radii 8, 7, 6, &c., in  $B, C, D,$  &c.

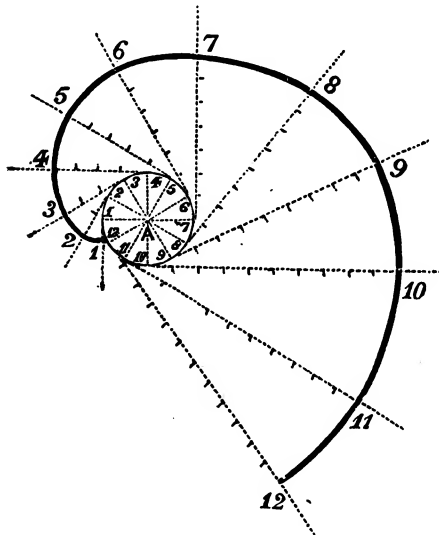
4. Through points  $B, C, D,$  &c., draw the required spiral  $1BCD\dots A.$

NOTE.—The above spiral is usually termed the Archimedes spiral of one revolution, in honour of Archimedes, one of the most celebrated mathematicians of antiquity, who flourished about 300 A.C.

### Problem 211.

To construct the involute of a given circle  $A.$

1. Divide the given circle  $A$  into any number of equal parts (say in this case *twelve*), and draw radii to each point of division 1, 2, 3, &c.



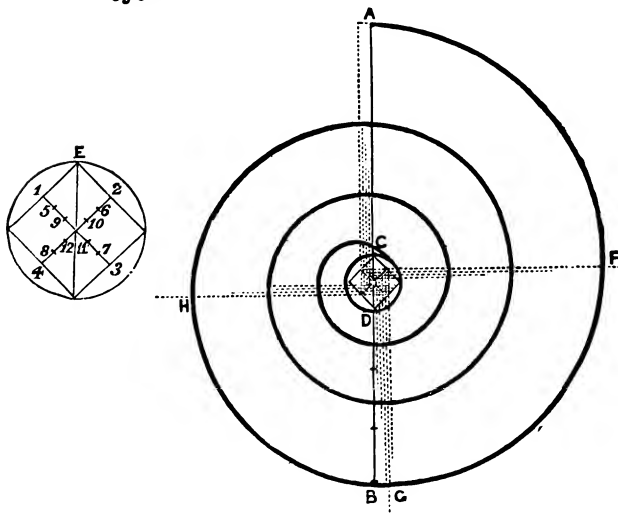
2. From the points of division 1, 2, 3, &c., draw tangents (Pr. 54), all being produced in the same direction.
3. On the tangent drawn from point 1, mark off a space equal to one-twelfth of the circumference.

4. On the tangents drawn from points 2, 3, 4, &c., mark off spaces equal to *two, three, four-twelfths, &c.*, of the circumference; *the tangent thus drawn from point 12 will be equal to the circumference of the circle.*
5. Through the outer extremities of the several tangents *draw the required involute.*

### Problem 212.

To construct the **spiral**, known as the **Ionic volute**, its longest diameter  $AB$  being given.

1. Bisect  $AB$  in  $C$  (Pr. 1).
2. Divide  $BC$  into *four* equal parts (Pr. 15), and let  $CD$  be one of those parts.
3. On  $CD$  as *diameter*, describe a circle, which is called the **eye** of the volute.



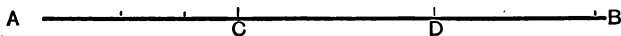
4. In this circle, inscribe a square, having two **vertical** diameters.
5. Divide each of these diameters into *six* equal parts, and number the divisions, as shown in  $E$ , *the eye enlarged.*

6. Produce 1, 2, *indefinitely* beyond 2, and from centre 1, with radius 1A, describe the arc AF.
7. Produce 2, 3, *indefinitely* beyond 3, and from centre 2, with radius 2F, describe the arc FG.
8. Produce 3, 4, *indefinitely* beyond 4, and from centre 3, with radius 3G, describe the arc GH.
9. By proceeding in this manner, the required volute is completed at point C. *The radius for each successive arc is obtained by producing a line from the preceding centre through the point next in advance.*

### SECTION XIII.—SCALES.

IN geometrical drawing, it is often required to make a copy of an object much smaller than the object itself. For this purpose, we must make use of a *scale*, so that the several portions of the object may be drawn *proportionally*.

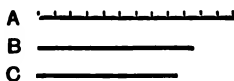
Scales are of various kinds; *e.g.*, *plain*, *diagonal*, and a *scale of chords*. The simplest form of scale is the **plain scale**, which consists of a line divided into equal (or unequal) portions of various lengths, each portion representing some fixed measurement. For example, let the given line AB, which is in reality about 3 in. in



length, represent an *actual* length of 3 yards; then one-third of the given line; *i.e.*, AC, will represent 1 yard; one-third of AC will represent 1 foot, &c. &c.

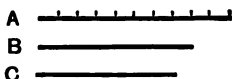
NOTE.—Such a scale is called a scale of  $\frac{1}{36}$ , because the whole line AB is  $\frac{1}{36}$  of the distance which it represents, *i.e.* 3 in. =  $\frac{1}{36}$  of 3 yards, or 108 inches. In this case, the fraction ( $\frac{1}{36}$ ) is called the *representative fraction* of the scale.

Moreover, we may make a line of *any* length correspond to a foot, e.g., 1 in. as in *A*,  $\frac{7}{8}$  in. as in *B*,  $\frac{3}{4}$  in. as in *C*.



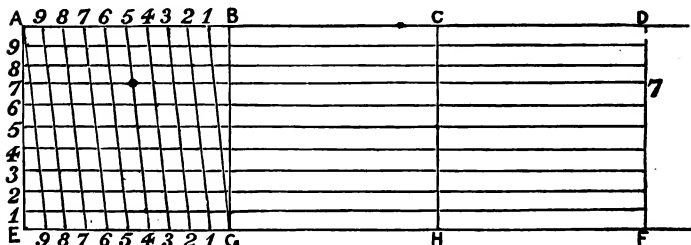
By dividing each of these lines into *twelve* equal parts, each part will correspond to an inch. Such scales are called "*duodecimal* scales."

*Note.*—Sometimes the line corresponding to a foot, as in the preceding, is divided into *ten* equal portions, e.g.—



Such scales are called "*decimal* scales."

**Diagonal Scale.**—A diagonal scale is a scale used for measuring more minute distances than can be done by an ordinary plain scale. It is usually divided into 100ths.



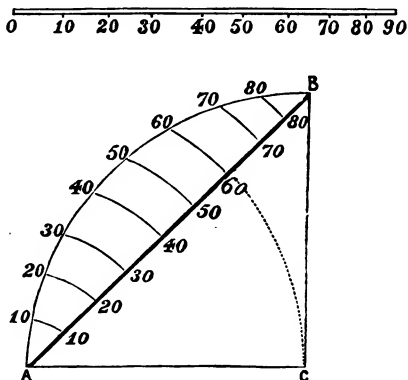
Its construction is as follows:—Any indefinite straight line is taken, from which a distance *AB* is set off according to the intended length of the scale; repeat *AB* any number of times as *BC*, *CD*, &c. Draw *EF* parallel to *AD* at any convenient distance from it; and draw the perpendiculars *AE*, *BG*, *CH*, &c. Divide *AB* and *AE* each into *ten* equal parts, and through 1, 2, 3, &c., draw lines parallel to *AD*; and through 1, 2, &c. (on the line *AB*), draw *1G*, *2I*, *3J*, &c., as in the above figure.

Now whatever number  $EG$  represents,  $G1$  will be the tenth of it, and the subdivisions in the vertical direction  $GB$  will be each 100th part. For example, if  $EG$  be a unit, the small divisions in  $EG$ , viz.  $G1$ , 1 2, &c., will be 10ths, and the divisions in the altitude will be the 100th parts of a unit.

To take any number off the scale, say  $2\frac{47}{100}$ , i.e. 2.47; place one foot of the compasses at  $F$ , and extend the other to the division marked 4 (on  $GE$ ); then move the compasses upward, keeping one foot on the line  $FD$ , and the other on the line 4 5; till the seventh interval is reached, and the extent on the compasses will be that required.

**Scale of Chords.**—A scale of chords is a scale by means of which, instead of a protractor or geometrical construction, angles of any number of degrees can be measured or constructed. When marked on a flat protractor, it is usually indicated by the sign  $C$ , or  $CHO$ .

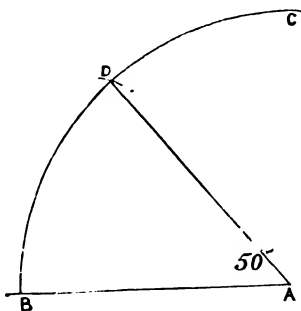
Thus  $CHO$



Its construction is as follows:—Any quadrant  $ABC$  is taken, and its arc  $AB$  is divided into 9 equal parts of  $10^\circ$  each; thus, with the radius of the arc as radius, points  $30^\circ$  and  $60^\circ$  are marked off on the arc  $AB$ . Then each portion is divided into three equal parts by trial, and each point of division is numbered in tens of degrees from 0 to 90. The chord of the arc  $AB$  is then drawn, and from  $A$  as centre, with the points of division as radii in succession, arcs are described cutting the chord  $AB$  in points numbered similarly to the



arc ; thus transferring the degrees in the arc to a straight line, from either of which the same measurements may be taken.



Thus, at the point  $A$ , in  $AB$  to make *any* angle with  $AB$ , say  $50^\circ$ , we take *the distance from 0 to  $60^\circ$  as radius*, and from  $A$  as centre with  $AB$  as radius, we describe the arc  $BC$ .

We then take the distance from 0 to  $50^\circ$ , and mark it off from  $B$  to  $D$ . Draw  $DA$ , then angle  $DAB = 50^\circ$ .

NOTE 1.—*Under all circumstances*, describe the arc  $BC$  with the distance from 0 to  $60^\circ$  as radius.

NOTE 2.—In the scale of chords, the divisions diminish from 0 to 90.

END OF PLANE GEOMETRY.

# PRACTICAL SOLID GEOMETRY.



# A COURSE OF PROBLEMS

IN

## PRACTICAL SOLID GEOMETRY.

---

### SECTION I.—DEFINITIONS, &c.



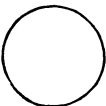
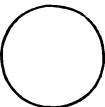

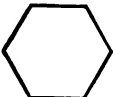
1. The preceding portion of this work consists of drawing *plane* figures. We now come to the consideration of drawing solid objects *geometrically*. Hitherto the various figures drawn have had only length and breadth, but a solid object has *another* dimension, viz., thickness or solidity.

2. It must here be noted that a solid may be represented in two distinct ways, viz., *perspectively* and *geometrically*. When an object is drawn *perspectively*, it is drawn as it *appears* to one from any given point of view; but when it is drawn *geometrically*, it is drawn as it *actually is*, its true proportions and size being represented according to scale.







3. It follows that, in drawing a solid object *geometrically*, *three* dimensions have to be delineated upon a plane surface. To this end, we make *two distinct drawings*, one which represents the exact space it covers, as it would be seen when looked at *from above*, and another which represents its vertical appearance, as it would be seen when looked at *in front*. The *former* of these is called the **plan**, and shows the length and breadth; the *latter* is termed the **elevation**, and shows the length and height.

4. From a consideration of the following illustrations, it will be

more readily seen what is understood by plan and elevation, *e.g.*,  
First,

- (A) The **plan** of a cube is represented thus—
- (B) „ of a *rectangular* prism thus—
- (C) „ of a cone thus—
- (D) „ of a cylinder thus—
- (E) „ of a *triangular* prism thus—
- (F) „ of a *hexagonal* prism thus—

Secondly,

- (A) The **elevation** of a cube is represented thus—
- (B) The **elevation** of a *rectangular* prism thus—
- (C) „ of a cone thus—
- (D) „ of a cylinder thus—
- (E) „ of a *triangular* prism thus—
- (F) „ of a *hexagonal* prism thus—

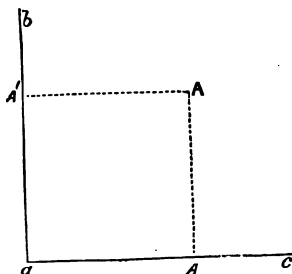
5. To any one not conversant with the principles of solid geometry, the above drawings convey no idea of a cube, cone, &c., both

plan and elevation being represented as a surface, drawn on the same plane—whereas they really represent objects as *covering two planes at right angles to one another*.

6. These two “**planes of projection**,” as they are called, are distinguished as the *horizontal* plane and the *vertical* plane. They might be conveniently illustrated by the floor and walls of a room; the floor representing the horizontal plane, and the several walls so many vertical planes. The line in which the floor and any given wall intersect each other is called the “**line of intersection** ;” and sometimes the ground line, or base line.

7. The two drawings which represent the plan and elevation of an object are in solid geometry called the projections of that object. Now as every solid is bounded by planes or surfaces, surfaces by lines, and lines by points, we proceed to show what is meant by the projection of a *point*; and of a *line* on the two planes of projection.

8. **First**, the projection of a *point* is obtained thus—



Let *bac* be the end view of a sheet of paper, folded in such a manner as to form a right angle at *a*. Then *ba* may be regarded as an end view of the vertical plane of projection, and *ac* an end view of the horizontal plane of projection.

Let *A* be a point in space. It is required to find its projections upon *ab*, *ac*.

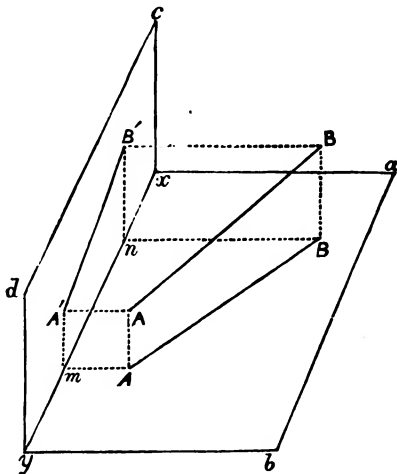
From *A*, draw *AA'* perpendicular to *ba*, and *AA* perpendicular to *ac*. Then the points *A*, *A'*, where the perpendiculars meet the given planes, are the projections of the point *A* in space.

NOTE 1.—The projection of a point upon a plane is the foot of a perpendicular let fall from the point upon the given plane.

NOTE 2.—The line which projects a point upon a plane, is termed the *projector* of that point, *e.g.*, *AA'*, *AA* are the projectors of the given point *A*.

NOTE 3.—From this it is evident that, when the projections of a point are given, the point may be found, since it is the point of intersection of the projectors of the point.

9. **Secondly**, the projections of a *line* are obtained thus—



Let  $abxy$  be the horizontal plane of projection, and  $cdyx$  the vertical, also let  $AB$  be the position of a line in space.

It is required to find the projections of the line  $AB$  upon  $abxy$  and  $cdyx$ .

The projection of  $B$  upon the plane  $abxy$  is the foot of the perpendicular let fall from  $B$  upon the given plane, say point  $B$ . Similarly, the projection of  $A$  upon the plane  $abxy$  is the foot of the perpendicular let fall from  $A$ , say point  $A$ .

Join  $AB$ ; then  $AB$  is the plan or projection of  $AB$  upon the horizontal plane.

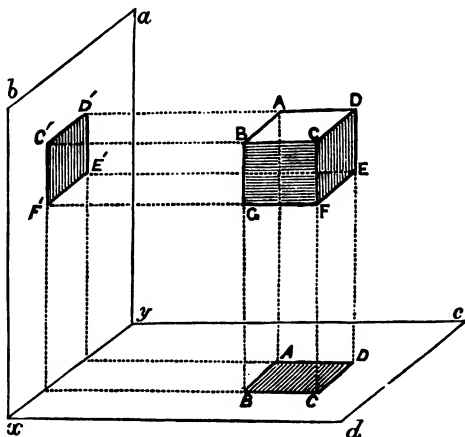
**Next**, the projection of  $B$  upon the plane  $cdyx$  is the foot of the perpendicular drawn from  $B$  to the given plane, say point  $B'$ . Similarly, we obtain the projection of  $A$  upon the given plane, say  $A'$ .

Join  $A'B'$ ; then  $A'B'$  is the elevation or projection of  $AB$  upon the vertical plane.

NOTE 1.—Having found  $A, B$ , the projections of  $A, B$ , upon the horizontal plane, the elevation of  $A'B'$  is thus found— $Am, Bn$  are drawn at right angles to the plane  $cdyx$ , meeting  $xy$ , the intersecting line of the two planes, in  $m$  and  $n$ . From  $m$  and  $n$  lines are drawn parallel to  $AA'$ , and  $BB'$ ; then the intersections  $A'$  and  $B'$  of these lines, with the perpendicular let fall from  $A$  and  $B$ , will be the required projections.

NOTE 2.—From the elevation  $A'B'$ , it may be readily seen how we obtain the plan  $AB$ —the operation being just the converse of that shown in the preceding note.

10. As soon as the foregoing projections are thoroughly understood, the student will easily comprehend the projection of a *solid*; e. g.—



Let  $abxy$  and  $cdxy$  be the planes of projection, and  $ABCD$ , &c., the position in space of a regular solid. It is required to find the projection of the solid upon the two given planes.

The plan of  $C$  will be the foot of a perpendicular let fall from  $C$  upon the horizontal plane  $cdxy$ . Let  $C'$  be its plan. In the same manner we find  $B$ . Join  $BC$ ; then  $BC$  is the plan of the line  $BC$ . In the same manner we find  $AD$ , the plan of the line  $AD$ . Join  $AB$  and  $CD$ ; then  $ABCD$  is the plan or projection of the given solid  $ABCD$ , &c., upon the *horizontal* plane of projection.

The intersections of the perpendiculars from the points  $C, D, E, F$ , with the plane  $abxy$  will give the elevation, or projection of the solid upon the *vertical* plane. The plane  $BBCC$ , passing through the line  $BC$ , projects that line upon  $cdxy$ . Also, the plane  $CC'D'D$  passing through the line  $CD$ , projects that line upon  $abxy$ .

11. The line  $BC$ , and all lines parallel to it, are parallel to the *horizontal* plane of projection; and the line  $CF$ , and all lines parallel to it, are parallel to the *vertical* plane of projection. Also, the line  $BC$ , and all lines parallel to it, are projected upon the horizontal plane of projection in lines equal and parallel to themselves; and the same



remark applies to the projections of the line  $CF$ , and to all lines parallel to it, upon the vertical plane of projection.

The line  $CF$ , and all lines parallel to it, are perpendicular to the horizontal plane of projection, and are projected on that plane in points. Also, the line  $BC$ , and all lines parallel to it, are perpendicular to the vertical plane of projection, and are projected on that plane in points.

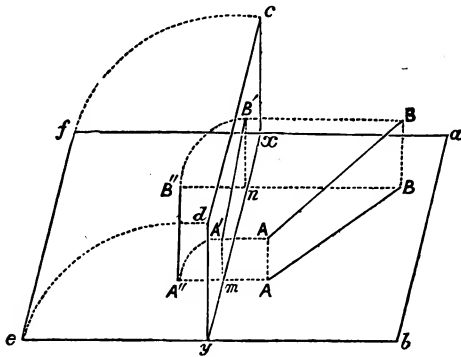
NOTE 1.—When a line is parallel to the horizontal and vertical plane, its projections are lines parallel to  $xy$ , the line of intersection, and equal in length to the original line. The projections  $C', D'$  and  $C, D$ , of the line  $CD$  are parallel to  $xy$ , and equal in length to  $CD$ .

NOTE 2.—When a line is perpendicular to the plane of projection its projection on that plane is a point. The lines  $CB, CF$ , respectively perpendicular to the vertical and horizontal plane, are projected on those planes in the points  $C'C$ .

NOTE 3.—Just as when the projections of a point are given, the point itself may be found, so the preceding solid may be determined from its projection on the two planes. For example, the surface  $BCFG$  is the intersection of the projecting plane of  $BC$  with the projecting plane of  $C'F'$ . The remaining surfaces are the intersections of the projecting planes of the lines which are the projections of those surfaces.

12. Since objects whose surfaces lie in different planes have to be represented upon a sheet of paper which is but one plane, the vertical plane must be supposed to revolve upon the line of intersection of the planes of projection until it coincides with the horizontal plane.

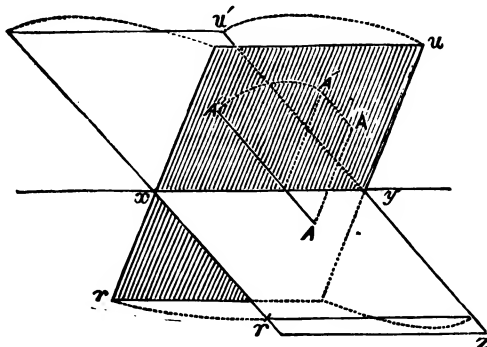
13. Thus in the figure following, the vertical plane  $cdxy$  after revolving one-fourth of a revolution, as shown by the arcs  $ed, fc$ , will



assume the position  $efxy$ , which is a continuation of the horizontal plane  $abxy$ . Now after the vertical plane  $cdxy$  has revolved as de-

scribed, the vertical projection  $A'$  of the point  $A$  will assume the position  $A''$ . In the same manner, the vertical projection  $B'$  of the point  $B$  will assume the position  $B''$ , and the line joining  $A''$  and  $B''$  will be the vertical projection of a line in space, whose horizontal projection is  $AB$ .

14. Again, in the subjoined figure, let  $xyu$  and  $xyu'$  represent the two planes of projection,  $xyu$  being the vertical, and  $xyu'$  the horizontal.



Let the vertical plane  $xyu$  revolve about  $xy$  until it takes the position  $xyu'$ , when  $xyz$  the horizontal plane and  $xyu'$  form one plane. Let  $A$  be a point in space; a line drawn at right angles to the vertical plane will intersect it in  $A'$ , which is the vertical projection of the point  $A$ . Next, drop a perpendicular from  $A$  to meet the horizontal plane  $xyz$  in the point  $A''$ , which will be the horizontal projection of the point  $A$ . On revolving the planes as stated, the vertical projection  $A'$  will assume the position  $A''$ .

After the vertical plane has been turned down to coincide with the horizontal plane;  $xyr$ , *i.e.*, that portion of it which was below the line of intersection, will take the position  $xyr'$ . Consequently, any elevation on it will be in front of the line of intersection.

15. It will be seen from the foregoing figures, that the distance of the elevation of a point from the ground line ( $xy$ ) shows the distance of the point from the horizontal plane; also that the distance of the plan of a point from the ground line ( $xy$ ) shows the distance of the point from the vertical plane.

NOTE.—In the course of solving problems in *solid geometry* it is frequently necessary to revolve a plane, until it coincides with the plane of projection. This is termed *rabatting*, or constructing the plane.

N

*SECTION II.*

*PROJECTION OF POINTS, LINES, &c.*

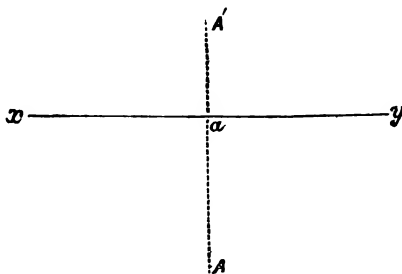
---

**Problem 1.**

*To find the plan of a point, its elevation being given.*

Let  $A'$  be the elevation of the given point. It is required to find its plan.

From  $A'$  draw a line perpendicular to  $xy$ . The plan of  $A'$  will be in this line. Let  $A$  be its plan. Then the points  $A'A$  are the ele-



vation and plan of a point in space, the height of which above the horizontal plane is equal to  $A'a$ , and the distance of which from the vertical plane is equal to  $Aa$ .

---

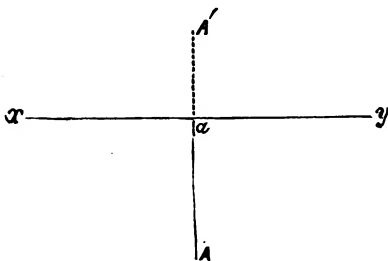
**Problem 2.**

*To draw the plan of a line, its elevation being given at right angles to the vertical plane.*

As the line is at right angles to the vertical plane, it will be projected on that plane in a point, just as (see figure, page 191) the line  $BC$  is projected on  $abxy$  in the point  $C'$ .

Let  $A'$  then be its elevation.

The plan of the line is found by dropping a perpendicular from  $A'$ , and making  $Aa$  equal in length to the given line. The line  $Aa$



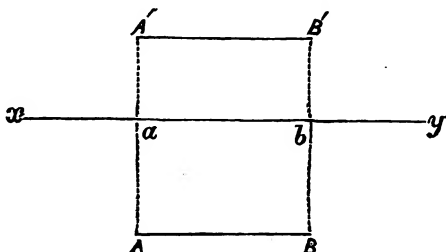
is parallel to the horizontal plane, and is projected on that plane in length equal to the original line.

NOTE.—The line  $Aa$ , viewed in the direction of its length, will be seen as the point  $A'$  in the vertical plane; and  $A'$ , viewed from *above*, *i.e.*, at right angles to  $xy$ , will be seen as  $Aa$ . Thus,  $Aa$  and  $A'$  are the plan and elevation of a line at right angles to the vertical plane, parallel to, and situated above the horizontal plane at a distance equal to  $A'a$ .

### Problem 3.

To find the plan of a line, its elevation being given parallel to the two planes of projection.

As the line is parallel to the two planes, its projections will be parallel to  $xy$ . Let  $A'B'$  then be its elevation.



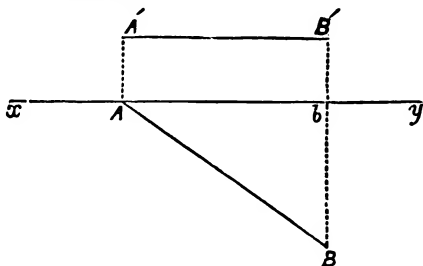
Its plan  $AB$  is parallel to  $xy$ , and equal in length to the original line. The lines  $A'B'$  and  $AB$  are the projections of a line in space, elevated above the horizontal plane a distance equal to  $A'a$  or  $B'b$ , and removed from the vertical plane a distance equal to  $Aa$  or  $Bb$ .

### Problem 4.

To find the **plan** of a line, its **elevation** being given parallel to the horizontal plane, but inclined to the vertical plane of projection.

Here the elevation of the line is parallel to  $xy$ , as in Pr. 3.

Let  $A'B'$  be its elevation.

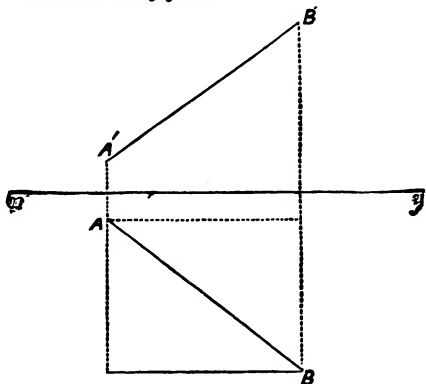


The plan  $AB$  shows that the line meets the vertical plane in  $A$ , also that it is inclined to that plane at an angle  $BAb$ .

The plan  $AB$  is the real length of the line.

### Problem 5.

To find the **plan** of a line, inclined to both planes of projection, its **elevation** being given.



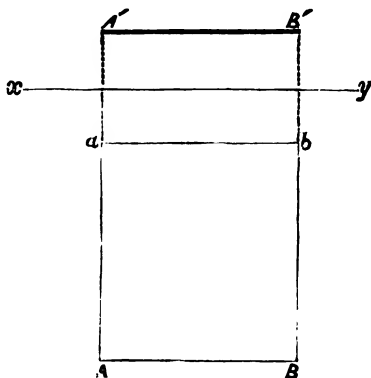
Let  $A'B'$  be the elevation. Taking  $A$  and  $B$  as the distances of

points  $A'$  and  $B'$  respectively, from the vertical plane, the line joining those points will be the plan of  $A'B'$ .

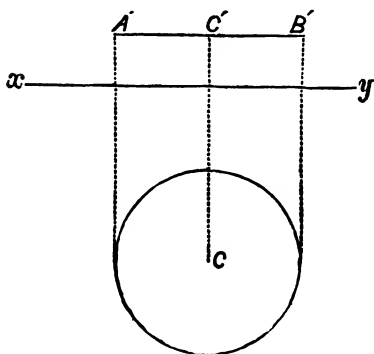
NOTE.—Neither the plan nor the elevation expresses the real length of the line, nor its inclination to the two planes of projection. (See Pr. 4.)

**Problem 6.**

To find the plan of the end elevation of a rectangular surface given parallel to the horizontal plane.



Let  $A'B'$  be its elevation. Now, the points  $A'$  and  $B'$  represent



lines perpendicular to the vertical plane, the projections of which will be found as in Pr. 2.

Make  $Aa$  and  $Bb$  equal in length to the given surface, and join  $AB$  and  $ab$ ; then  $ABba$  is the required plan.

It may be here remarked that the edge view of a circular surface will be a *line* equal in length to the diameter of the circle.

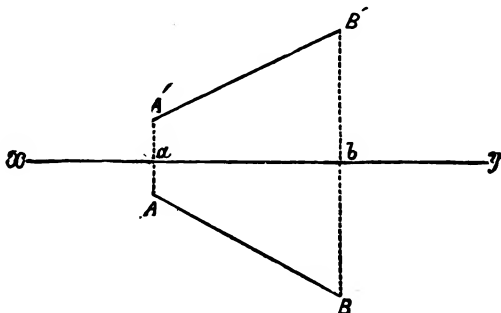
For example, let it be required to find the plan of a circle, having its edge view given as in this problem (see figure, page 197).

Let  $A'B'$  be its elevation. Then point  $C'$  will represent the centre of the circle, and the required plan will be found by taking any point  $C$  in the projector from  $C'$ . Then from  $C$  as centre, and radius  $C'A'$  or  $C'B'$  describe a circle which will be the required plan.

### Problem 7.

*To find the elevation of a line, its plan being given.*

Let  $AB$  be the plan of the given line. Draw  $AA'$  and  $BB'$  at right angles to  $xy$ , making  $A'a$  and  $B'b$  equal to the supposed height



of  $A, B$  above the horizontal plane, and join  $A'B'$ ; then  $A'B'$  is the elevation required.

NOTE.—The line is inclined to both planes of projection as in Pr. 5.

### SECTION III.

## ELEMENTARY SOLIDS.

---

The solids most commonly used to illustrate the principles of Solid Geometry are as follows: the *cube*, *prism*, *pyramid*, *sphere*, *cone*, and *cylinder*.

- (1.) "A **cube** is a solid figure contained by six equal squares" (Euc. XI, Def. 25).
- (2.) "A **prism** is a solid figure contained by plane figures, of which two that are opposite are equal, similar, and parallel to one another; and the others parallelograms" (Euc. XI, Def. 13).
- (3.) "A **pyramid** is a solid figure contained by planes that are constituted betwixt one plane and one point above it in which they meet" (Euc. XI, Def. 12).
- (4.) "A **sphere** is a solid figure described by the revolution of a semicircle about its diameter, which remains unmoved" (Euc. XI, Def. 14).
- (5.) "A **cone** is a solid figure described by the revolution of a right-angled triangle about one of the sides containing the right angle, which side remains fixed. If the fixed side be equal to the other side containing the right angle, the cone is called a right-angled cone; if it be less than the other side, an obtuse-angled; and if greater, an acute-angled cone" (Euc. XI, Def. 18).
- (6.) "A **cylinder** is a solid figure described by the revolution of a right-angled parallelogram about one of its sides which remains fixed" (Euc. XI, Def. 21).

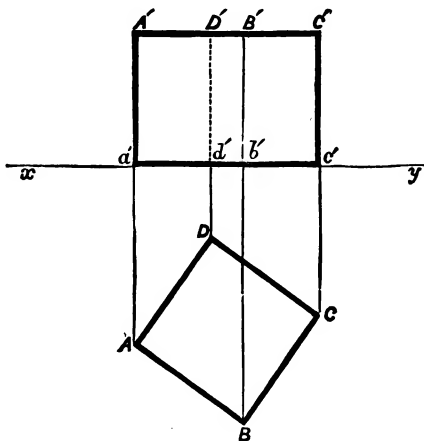


### Problem 8.

To find the plan of a cube, its elevation being given.

Let  $A'B'C'D'$ , &c., be the elevation of a cube. It is required to find its plan.

From  $A'$  let fall a perpendicular to  $xy$ , and produce it from  $a'$  to  $A$ , making  $a'A$  equal to the distance that  $A'$  is from the vertical plane. From  $B'$  draw a line at right angles to  $xy$ , and from  $A$ , with a radius equal to a side of the cube as  $A'a'$ , cut the perpendicular in  $B$ . Join  $AB$ ; it will be the plan of  $A'B'$ . Now from  $C'$  draw a line perpendicular to  $xy$  and produce it. From  $B$ , with a radius equal to



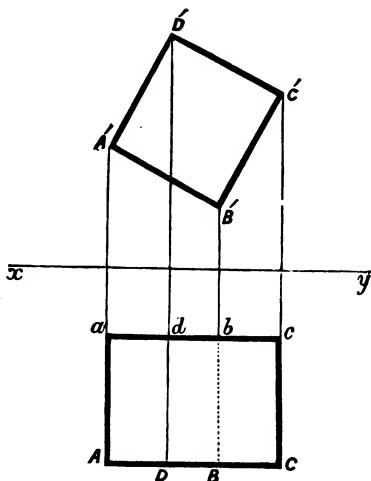
a side of the cube, as  $B'b'$ , cut it in  $C$ , then  $C$  will be the plan of  $C'$ . Join  $BC$ ; it will be the plan of  $B'C'$ . Again, drop a perpendicular from  $D'$  to  $xy$ , and produce it. From  $C$ , with radius  $C'c'$  describe an arc to cut it in  $D$ . Join  $CD$  and  $DA$  to complete the required plan. The points  $a'd'b'c'$  being opposite to  $A'D'B'C'$ ; their plans are exactly covered by the points  $A, D, B, C$ .

### Problem 9.

The elevation of a cube being given, when one face is inclined to the ground at an angle of  $60^\circ$  and another face at an angle of  $30^\circ$ , to find its plan.

Let  $A'B'C'D'$  be the elevation of the given cube. It is required to find its plan.

From  $A'$  let fall a perpendicular  $A'A$ , and make  $Aa$  equal to the length of the line represented by the point  $A'$ ; *i.e.*, equal to  $A'B'$  or any side of the square  $A'B'C'D'$ . Through  $A$  and  $a$ , draw lines paral-



lel to  $xy$ , and from  $D$ ,  $B$  and  $C$ , drop perpendiculars intersecting these lines in  $D$ ,  $d$ ,  $B$ ,  $b$ , and  $C$ ,  $c$ ; for as all the edges of a cube are equal, the lines of which the points  $B'C'D'$  are the vertical projections are equal to that expressed by  $A'$ ; *i.e.*, to  $Aa$ .

NOTE.—The plan of the edge of the cube expressed by  $B'$  is shown by a dotted line, because it is not seen.

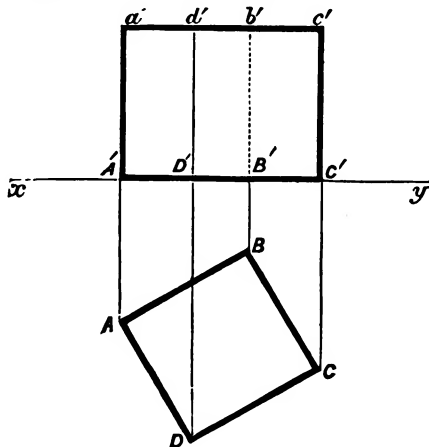
### Problem 10.

*To find the elevation of a cube, its plan being given.*

Let  $ABCD$  be the plan of a cube. It is required to find its elevation.

In this case, each corner of the square is the plan of one of the perpendicular edges of the cube, and  $ABCD$  is the plan of the upper surface also. From the points  $A$ ,  $D$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , draw projectors at right angles to  $xy$ ; and at the points where these meet the ground line, we have the elevations of the four corners of the square.

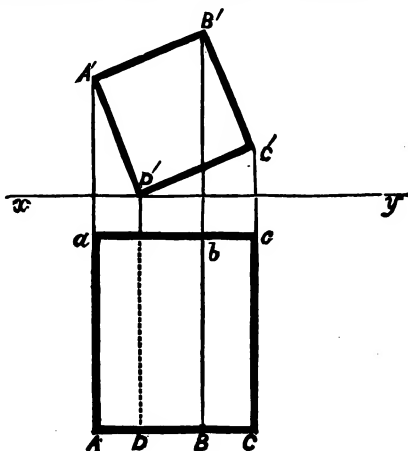
Continue the projectors through  $A'$ ,  $D'$ , &c., making  $A'a'$ ,  $B'b'$ ,  $C'c'$ , &c., equal in height to the edge of the given cube.



A line then drawn through the points  $a'$ ,  $b'$ ,  $c'$ , &c., will be parallel to  $xy$ , and will complete the required elevation.

### Problem 11.

To draw the **plan** of a square prism, its **elevation** being given.



Let  $A'B'C'D'$  be the elevation of a square prism. It is required to

draw its plan. From the angular points  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , &c., draw lines at right angles to the line of intersection ( $xy$ ), and upon these set off the length of the prism; *i.e.*, make  $Aa$ , &c., equal to the length of the solid. Through the points  $A$  and  $a$  draw lines parallel to  $xy$ , to show the ends of the prism. Each of the points  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , &c., represents a line perpendicular to the vertical plane. In the plan these lines will be shown at right angles to  $xy$  (Pr. 2).

NOTE 1.—The line represented by  $D'$  will be dotted in the plan, because under the given circumstances it is not seen.

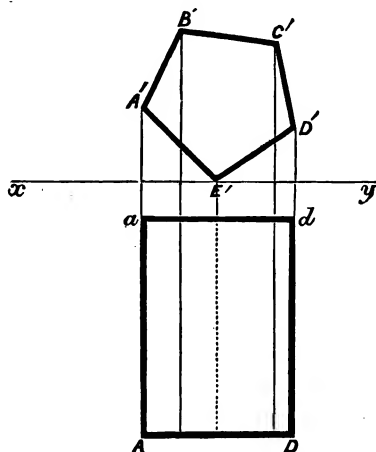
NOTE 2.—The ends of prisms may be triangles, squares, or polygons; a prism is said to be triangular when its ends are triangles, square when its ends are square, &c., &c.

NOTE 3.—The axis of a prism is a line joining the centres of the bases.

NOTE 4.—When the base is a regular figure, it is called a regular prism but when the base is an irregular figure, the solid on it is termed irregular.

### Problem 12.

To draw the plan of a pentagonal prism, its elevation being given.



Let  $A'B'C'D'E'$  be the elevation of a pentagonal prism. It is required to draw its plan. From the angular points,  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , &c., draw lines at right angles to the ground line ( $xy$ ), and upon these set off the length of the prism; *i.e.*, make  $Aa$ , &c., equal to the

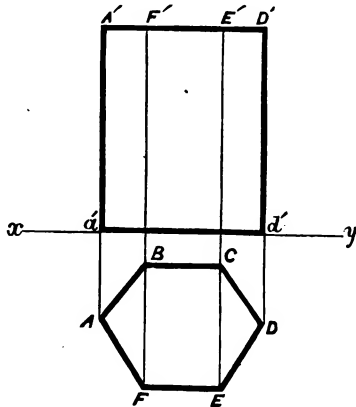
length of the solid. Through the points  $A$  and  $\alpha$ , draw lines parallel to  $xy$  to show the ends of the prism. Each of the points  $A', B', C', \&c.$ , represents a line perpendicular to the vertical plane. In the plan these lines will be shown at right angles to  $xy$  (Pr. 2).

NOTE.—The line represented by  $E'$  will be dotted in the plan, because under the given circumstances it is not seen.

### Problem 13.

To find the elevation of a hexagonal prism, its plan being given.

Let  $ABCDEF$  be the plan of a hexagonal prism. It is required to find its elevation.



From  $A$ , raise a perpendicular to  $xy$ , and from  $\alpha'$ , the point in which it cuts  $xy$ , set off  $\alpha'A'$  equal to the length of the prism. From  $A'$ , draw  $A'D'$  parallel to  $xy$ , and from  $F, E, D$ , raise perpendiculars to meet this line. We have then drawn the elevation of the hexagonal prism.

### Problem 14.

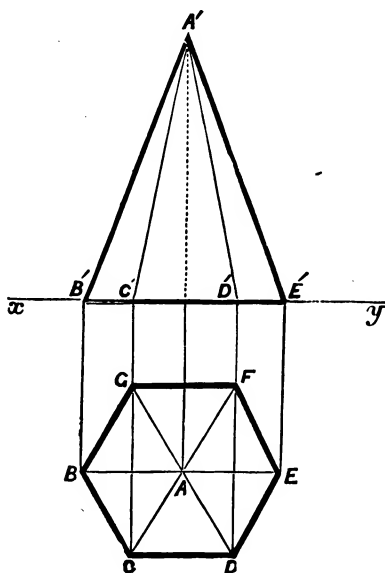
To find the plan of a hexagonal pyramid, its elevation being given.

Let  $A'B'C'D'E'$  be the elevation of a hexagonal pyramid. It is required to find its plan.

**First**, from  $C'$  draw a projector  $C'C$  perpendicular to  $xy$ , also from  $D'$  draw a projector  $D'D$  at right angles to  $xy$  and equal in length to  $C'C$ . Join  $C$  and  $D$ , and it will be the projection of the front edge of the base of the pyramid.

**Next**, from  $B'$  drop a perpendicular to  $xy$ , and from  $C$ , with  $CD$  as radius, describe an arc cutting the perpendicular last drawn in  $B$ . Join  $B$  and  $C$ , and it will be the plan of the side edge  $B'C'$ .

**Again**, from  $E'$  drop a perpendicular to  $xy$ , and from  $D$ , with  $DC$  as radius, describe an arc cutting the perpendicular last drawn in  $E$ . Join  $D$  and  $E$ , and it will be the plan of the side edge  $D'E'$ .



Now, as the points immediately behind  $C'$  and  $D'$  are covered in the elevation by  $C'$  and  $D'$ , it follows that their projections will coincide; therefore, from  $B$  and  $E$  as centres, with radius  $BC$  or  $DE$ , cut those projectors in  $G$  and  $F$  respectively. Join  $BG$ ,  $GF$ , and  $FE$ ; then these will be the plans of the remaining edges of the base. Now, join  $BE$ , a projector drawn from  $A'$  to meet it will give the point  $A$ , the plan of the apex of the pyramid, so that  $BA$  and  $AE$  are the plans of the lines  $B'A'$ ,  $A'E'$ . Draw the lines  $CF$  and

$DG$  passing through point  $A$ , so that  $CA, AD$ , will be respectively the plans of  $C'A'$  and  $A'D'$ .

NOTE 1.— $AG$  and  $AF$  are the plans of the lines not seen in elevation.

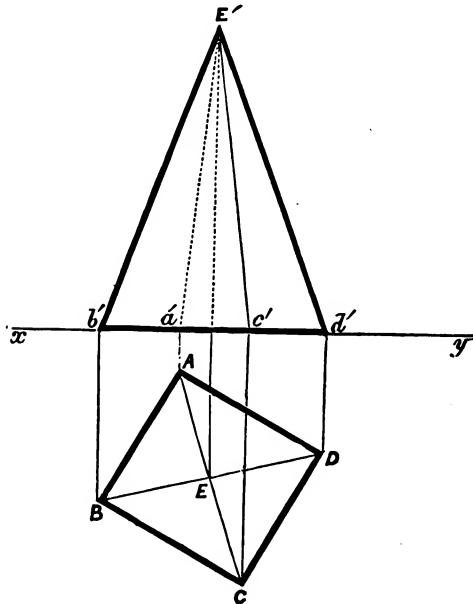
NOTE 2.—Pyramids take their names from their bases, like prisms.

NOTE 3.—The axis of a pyramid is a line joining the centre of its base to the apex.

### Problem 15.

To find the elevation of a square pyramid, its plan being given.

Let  $ABCD$  be the plan of a square pyramid. It is required to find its elevation.



From the point  $B$  draw a line at right angles to  $xy$ , meeting it in  $b'$ , also from  $C, D, A$ , draw lines perpendicular to  $xy$ , meeting it in the points  $c', d', a'$ .

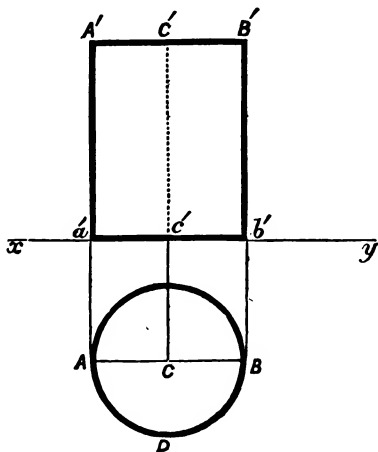
Now, since  $C, D, A$  are points on the horizontal plane, and as  $xy$  represents that plane seen in elevation, the points  $b', a', c', d'$  on it are the elevations of those points.  $E$  is the plan of the apex of the pyramid, to find the elevation of which we draw a line at right angles to  $xy$  from  $E$ , and elevate it above the line the required height of the point  $E'$  above the horizontal plane. Join  $E'b', E'c', E'd'$ , for the angles of the figure.

**NOTE**—The line  $E'a'$  being covered by the surface  $b'c'E'$  is represented by a dotted line.

### Problem 16.

To find the **plan** of a cylinder, its **elevation** being given.

Let  $A'B'a'b'$  be the elevation of a cylinder. It is required to find its plan.



In this case, the surface represented by the line  $A'B'$  is a circle whose plane is parallel to  $xy$ ; the points  $A'$  and  $B'$  will represent the diameter and  $C'$  the centre. Draw projectors from  $A', B'$ , and  $C'$ , to the points  $A, B$ , and  $C$ . Draw  $AC, CB$ , parallel to  $xy$ . From  $C$ , with radius  $CA$  or  $CB$ , describe the required circle  $ABD$ .

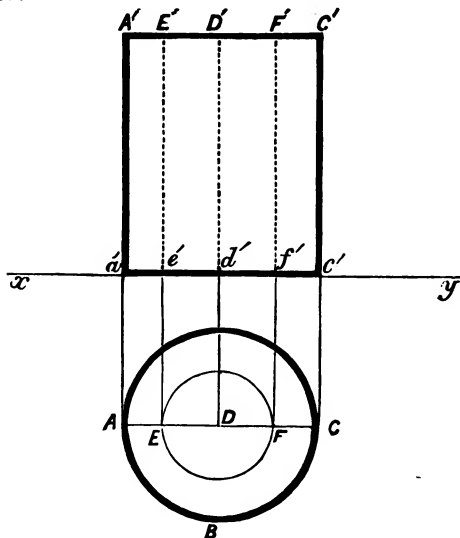
**NOTE**—A cylinder may be defined as a prism having an infinite number of faces.



**Problem 17.**

To find the elevation of a hollow cylinder, its plan being given.

Let  $ABC$  be the plan of the given cylinder. It is required to find its elevation.



From  $A$ , draw  $AA'$  at right angles to  $xy$  and making  $A'a'$  equal to the length of the cylinder, then draw  $A'C'$  parallel to the ground line ( $xy$ ) and draw  $Cc'$  perpendicular to  $xy$ .

Let  $D$  be the plan of the axis of the cylinder. Now, in order to represent the interior of the given cylinder, draw  $AC$  passing through  $D$  and parallel to  $xy$ . From the points  $E$  and  $F$ , erect perpendiculars  $EE'$  and  $FF'$ ; then the lines  $E'e'$  and  $F'f'$  being the elevations of  $E$  and  $F$  are covered by the surface  $ABC$ , and thus are represented as dotted lines in the figure.

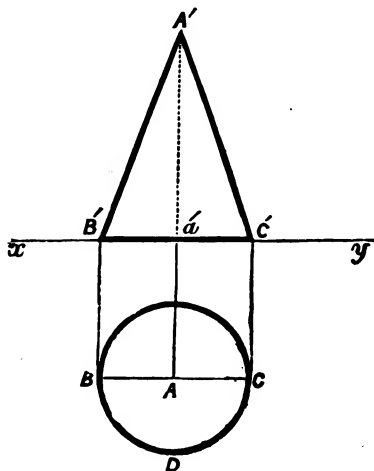
NOTE.—The line  $Dd'$  is called the *axis* of the cylinder. When the axis is perpendicular to the plane of its base, the cylinder is termed a *right* cylinder; but when it is inclined to the base, it is termed *oblique*.

**Problem 18.**

To find the plan of a cone, its elevation being given.

Let  $A'B'C'$  be the elevation of a cone. It is required to find its plan.

The line  $B'C'$  represents a circle on the horizontal plane, and the points  $B'$  and  $C'$  will be the extremities of the diameter, and  $a'$  the centre. Obtain the projection of this line, by drawing a line parallel



to  $xy$ , and draw projectors from  $B'$ ,  $a'$ , and  $C'$  at right angles to  $xy$  to meet it in  $B$ ,  $A$ , and  $C$ . From  $A$ , with radius  $AB$  or  $AC$ , describe the circle  $BCD$ . The plan of the apex  $A'$  coincides with  $A$ , the centre of the circle.

NOTE.—A cone may be defined as a pyramid, having an infinite number of faces.

### Problem 19.

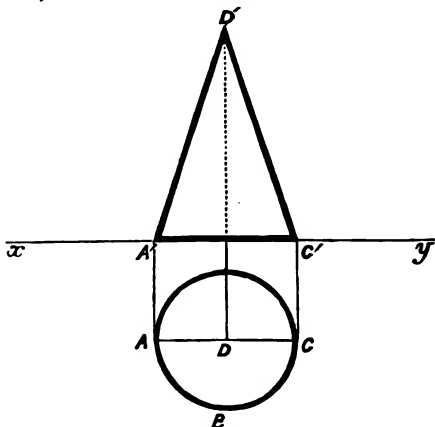
*To find the elevation of a cone, its plan being given.*

Let  $ABC$  be the plan of a cone. It is required to find its elevation.

From the point  $A$ , draw a line at right angles to  $xy$ , meeting it in  $A'$ ; also from point  $C$ , draw a line perpendicular to  $xy$ , meeting it in the point  $C'$ . Now, since  $A$  and  $C$  are points on the horizontal plane, and as  $xy$  represents that plane seen in elevation, the points  $A'$  and  $C'$  on it are the elevations of those points.  $D$  is the plan of the apex of the cone, to find the elevation of which we draw a line at right angles to  $xy$  from  $D$ , and elevate it above the line the required height of the point  $D$  above the horizontal plane.

o

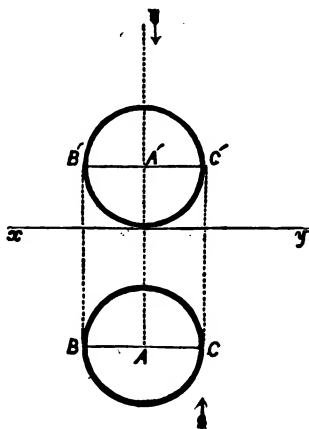
Then join  $D'A'$ ,  $D'C'$ ; and  $D'A'C'$  will be the elevation of the cone.



NOTE.—The axis of a cone is a line joining the centre of its base to the apex.

### Problem 20.

To find both plan and elevation of a sphere.



In either case, these will be represented by circles, whose diameters

---

are equal to the diameter of the given sphere ; *e.g.*, take the elevation of the sphere. The view of it from above representing the plan will be a circle of which the line  $B'C'$  is the elevation. Again, let the plan be given, the elevation of it will be a circle represented in plan by the straight line  $BC$ .

NOTE.—If a semicircle revolve upon its diameter, it generates the surface of a sphere.

## SECTION IV.

### TRACES OF LINES AND PLANES.

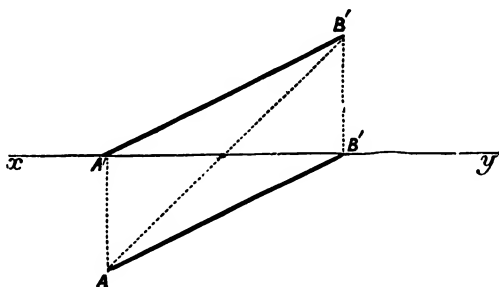
---

1. The horizontal and vertical planes of projection are from their mutual relationship termed *co-ordinate* planes.
2. The points in which any line intersects the co-ordinate planes are called the *traces of that line*, and these traces are termed horizontal or vertical, according as they are referred to the horizontal or vertical plane.
3. The lines in which any plane intersects the co-ordinate planes are termed the *traces of that plane*, and are distinguished as the horizontal or vertical trace, according to the plane of projection in which it lies.
4. When the traces of a plane are given, the plane itself is given ; and when the projections of a line are given, its traces may be found: or, conversely, the traces being given, its projections may be found.
5. It has been stated that the intersection of the planes of projection is called the ground line, or base line ( $xy$ ). Now, if a plane be not parallel to the ground line, it must meet it in a point common to both of its traces.
6. If a plane be parallel to the ground line, its traces are also parallel to the ground line ; for as the base line is parallel to the plane, it cannot meet it, and therefore cannot meet the traces which are lines in the plane ; but each trace and the ground line are in one plane, consequently they are parallel (**Euc. I., Def. 35**).
7. If a plane be perpendicular to the ground line, its traces are also perpendicular to it (**Euc. XI., Def. 3**) ; and if a plane be parallel to one plane of projection, its trace upon the other is parallel to the ground line (**Euc. XI., 16**).

### Problem 21.

*Given the traces of a line, to find its projections.*

Let  $AB'$  be the traces of the given line; *i.e.*,  $A$  and  $B'$  are the points where a line in space meets the planes of projection.



The line joining  $A$  and  $B'$  will be the line in space.

**First**, let us find its *horizontal* projection. Draw  $B'B$  at right angles to  $xy$  and join  $AB'$ ; then  $AB'$  is the projection upon the horizontal plane of the line in space.

**Secondly**, let us find its *vertical* projection. Draw  $AA'$  at right angles to  $xy$  and join  $A'B'$ ; then  $A'B'$  is the projection upon the vertical plane of the line in space.

NOTE 1.—Neither plan nor elevation expresses the real length of the line.

NOTE 2.—The vertical trace  $B'$  shows that  $B'$  is elevated above the horizontal plane a distance equal to  $B'B$ , and that  $A$  shows that  $A'$  is removed from the vertical plane a distance equal to  $A'A$ .

### Problem 22.

*Given the projections of a line, to find its length.*

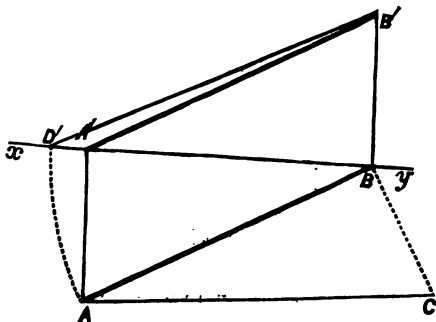
Let  $AB$  and  $A'B'$  be the projections of the given line. It is required to find its length.

If we conceive a vertical plane as passing through  $AB$ , this plane will have  $AB$  for its horizontal trace, and  $BB'$  for its vertical. Imagine then this plane to revolve upon  $AB$ , until it coincides with the horizontal plane. In order to illustrate what is meant by the

plane revolving upon  $AB$ , let a triangle be placed with the bevelled edge on  $AB$ , and keeping this edge in contact with the surface of the paper, let the triangle be turned down, until it becomes horizontal. It will thus assume the position of the triangle  $ABC$ . In order to construct this triangle, draw  $BC$  perpendicular to  $AB$ , and make it equal to  $BB'$  (because  $BB'$  expresses the height of  $B$  above the horizontal plane of projection) and join  $AC$ . Then  $AC$  the hypotenuse is the real length of the line.

$AC$  may be regarded as the elevation of  $AB$ , when viewed at right angles to the plane, passing through it at right angles to the horizontal plane, *i.e.*, in the direction of  $CB$ .

The construction may also be made in the vertical plane as follows:—make  $B'D'$  equal to  $AB$ , and join  $B'D'$ . Then  $B'D'$  is the real



length of the line. The triangle  $B'D'B$  represents the vertical plane conceived to pass through  $AB$ , after it has been made to coincide with the vertical plane of projection, by being moved through the arc  $AD'$ .

We thus have this practical rule for finding the real length of a line, whose projections are given—*viz.*, upon the given horizontal projection construct a right-angled triangle of which the altitude or perpendicular is equal to the difference of the altitudes of the extremities of the line above the plane of projection. With reference to the vertical plane, we should make the vertical projection of the line the base of a right-angled triangle of which the perpendicular is equal to the difference of the distances of the extremities of the line from the vertical plane of projection.

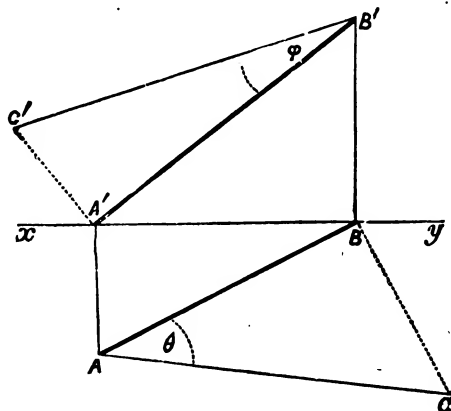
### Problem 23.

*Given the projections of a line, to find the angles which it makes with the planes of projection.*

Let  $AB$  and  $A'B'$  be the projections of the given line. It is re-

quired to find the angles which it makes with the planes of projection.

From a consideration of the preceding, it will be readily seen that the angle made with the horizontal plane is  $CAB$ . The angle made with the vertical plane is  $A'B'C'$ , which is found as follows:—From point  $A'$ ,  $A'C'$  is drawn at right angles to  $A'B'$ , and equal to  $A'A$ .  $B'C'$  is then joined.



NOTE 1.—The angle which a line makes with its plan is its inclination to the horizontal plane, and the angle which a line makes with its elevation is its inclination to the vertical plane.

NOTE 2.—When the actual number of degrees is not required, the inclination of a line to the horizontal plane is usually indicated by the Greek letter  $\theta$ , and to the vertical plane by  $\phi$ .

### Problem 24.

*The traces of two planes being given, to find the projections of their common intersection.*

Let  $AB$  and  $AC$  be the horizontal traces of the two planes, meeting in  $A$ ; and  $DB$ ,  $DC$ , the vertical traces of the two planes, meeting in  $D$ . It is required to find the projections of their common intersection.

Since the points  $A$  and  $D$  are common to the two planes, the line joining them will be the line in which the planes intersect; and the projections of this line will fulfil the conditions given.

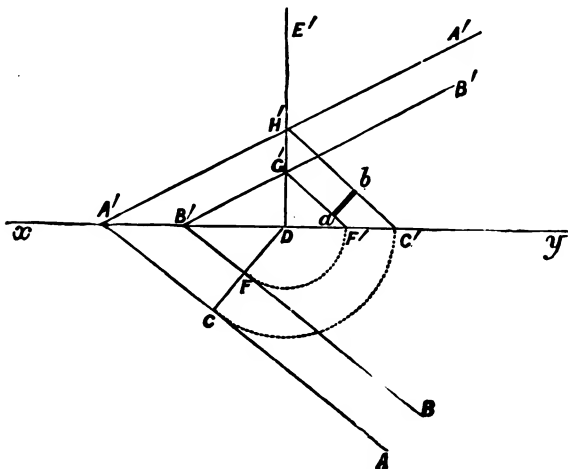
Now as  $A$  and  $D$  are the traces of a line in space, its projections can be found by **Pr. 21**. Hence, draw  $D'D$  at right angles to  $xy$ ,







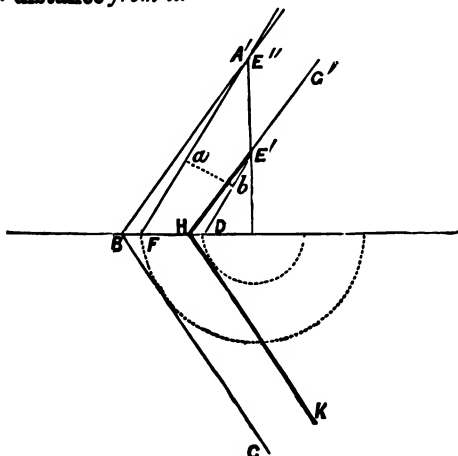
$DC'$ , equal respectively to  $DF$ ,  $DC$ , and join  $GF$ ,  $H'C'$ . Then  $ab$  at



right angles to these lines is the required distance between the planes.

### Problem 27.

To determine by its traces a plane parallel to a given plane, and at a given distance from it.



Let the given plane be  $A'BC$ , and  $ab$  the given distance.

It is required to determine by its traces a plane parallel to  $A'BC$ .

In this case we proceed as if to find the inclination of  $A'BC$ , and at a perpendicular distance equal to  $ab$ , draw  $DE'$  parallel to  $F'E''$ .

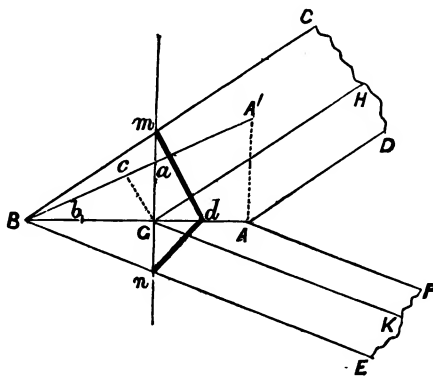
Then  $E'$  is one point in the vertical trace of the required plane, and as parallel lines have parallel traces,  $G'H$  and  $HK$  drawn parallel to  $A'B$ ,  $BC$ , will be those of the plane required.

### Problem 28.

To determine the angle between two planes.

Let  $ABCD$  and  $ABEF$  be the two given planes, of which  $BC$  and  $BE$  are the traces; and  $GH$ ,  $GK$ ;  $AD$ ,  $AF$ , horizontals.

First, find the elevation of  $AB$ , the intersection of the planes; that is to say, make  $AA'$  drawn perpendicular to  $AB$  equal to the height of  $A$  above the plane of projection, and join  $A'B$ . Draw  $mn$  at right angles to  $AB$ , and consider it as the trace of a plane cutting the traces of the given planes in  $m$  and  $n$ .



Next, if we consider  $mn$  as the trace of a plane at right angles to the horizontal plane, it would cut the given planes in a triangular section. This triangle will be found thus—make  $Gb$  equal to  $Ga$  (because  $G$  is elevated above the plane of projection a distance equal to  $Ga$ ) and join  $mb$ ,  $nb$ .

The solution of the problem then consists in finding the sections of the planes when cut by a third plane at right angles, not to the

horizontal plane, but to  $AB$ , the intersection of the planes. Hence, draw  $Gc$  at right angles to  $A'B$ ;  $Gc$  will be the elevation of the plane drawn perpendicular to  $A'B$ ; and as this plane contains the lines which measure the angle between the given planes, we have only to construct  $Gc$  to find this angle. Make  $Gd$  equal to  $Gc$  and join  $md$ ,  $nd$ ; then  $mdn$  is the angle between the planes. The angle  $mdn$  is called the *dihedral angle* and *profile angle* of the planes.

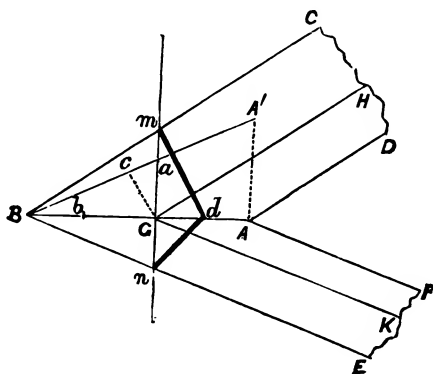
NOTE 1.—A *dihedral angle* is the angle contained by two intersecting planes.

NOTE 2.—The *profile angle* of two planes is the angle contained by the two straight lines in which these planes are cut by a third plane, at right angles to both of them. This third plane is called a *profile plane*. Since these lines are perpendicular to the intersection of the two given planes (Euc. XI., Def. 3), the profile angle will be the measure of the dihedral angle (Euc. XI., Def. 6).

### Problem 29.

To draw a plane, so that it makes a given angle with a given plane and passes through a line in the first.

Let  $ABEF$  be the given plane, the line in which the planes are to intersect each other being  $AB$ .



Find  $A'B$ , the elevation of  $AB$ . Then draw  $mn$  perpendicular to  $AB$ , intersecting it in  $G$ , and from  $G$  draw  $Gc$  perpendicular to  $A'B$ .

Make  $Gd$  equal to  $Gc$ , and join  $dn$ . At the point  $d$  in  $dn$ , make the

angle  $ndm$  equal to the angle which the required plane is to make with the given plane  $ABEF$ .

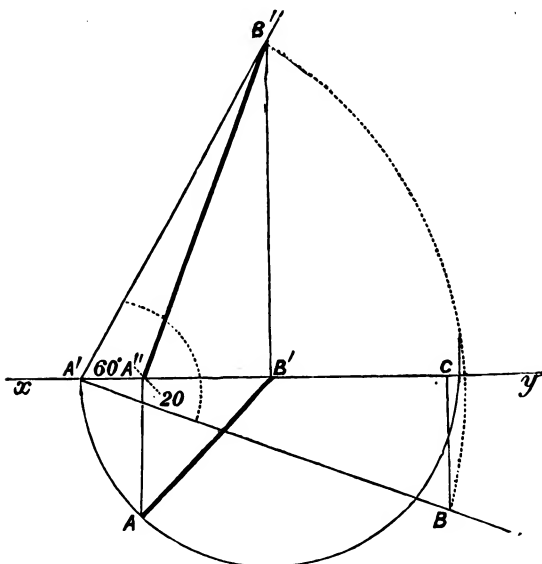
Then the point  $m$ , where  $dm$  meets  $mn$ , will be a point in the horizontal trace of the plane sought; and as  $B$  is another point in this trace, join  $Bm$ , and produce it to  $C$ , then  $BC$  is the horizontal trace of the required plane, which will be completed by drawing  $AD$  parallel to  $BC$ .

NOTE.—This problem is the converse of the preceding.

### Problem 30.

*To determine the plan and elevation of any line inclined at  $60^\circ$  to the horizontal plane and  $20^\circ$  to the vertical plane.*

If a number of lines lie upon the surface of a cone standing with its base upon the paper, and each line having one of its extremities



in the apex, these lines will all be equally inclined to the horizontal. They will also make with the paper the same angle which the sides of the cone makes with its base. The surface of a cone whose base

angle is  $60^\circ$  is the locus of all straight lines which pass through the apex, and are inclined at that angle to the horizontal plane.

In  $xy$  take any point  $A'$ , draw a line  $A'B'$  making the angle of  $60^\circ$  with it. Draw  $B'B'$  at right angles, and consider  $A'B'B'$  as half elevation of a cone. Then an arc, having  $B'$  for its centre, and  $B'A'$  radius, will represent part of its plan.

Now, if lines through  $B'$  be conceived to lie upon the surface of the cone, only two of them—*i.e.*, those on the extreme right and left—will be shown in their full length in elevation. As the line travels round the solid, its elevation alters its length; when it is in such a position as this, it makes an angle with the vertical plane. In the given case, therefore, we have to determine the exact position upon the cone, when the line is inclined  $20^\circ$  to the vertical plane.

There will be four solutions—two when the line is in front of the cone, and two when it is behind.

At  $A'$ , set out a line  $A'B$  equal to the side of the cone, and making an angle of  $20^\circ$  with  $xy$ . Draw  $BC$  at right angles to the base line, and the length  $A'C$  is that of the elevation of the line when it makes an angle of  $20^\circ$  with the vertical plane. With  $B$  as centre, and radius equal to  $A'C$ , describe an arc intersecting  $xy$  in  $A''$ . Join  $A''B$ , which is the required elevation.

A projector from  $A''$  meeting the arc first drawn in  $A$ , gives the plan of  $A''$ , one of the extremities of the line. Join  $AB'$  and the required problem is solved, *i.e.*,  $AB'$  is the plan of the line.

### Problem 31.

*Given an equilateral triangle with two of its sides inclined, at  $60^\circ$  and  $30^\circ$  to the horizon, to draw its plan, and determine the inclination of the plane in which it is situated.*

Let  $ABC$  be the given equilateral triangle.

**First**, draw  $BD$ ,  $CE$  making with  $AB$  and  $AC$  angles of  $60^\circ$  and  $30^\circ$ .

From  $A$ , draw  $AF$  perpendicular to  $EC$ , and with centre  $A$ , and radius  $AF$ , describe a circle. Draw  $Gc$  parallel to  $DB$ , tangential to this circle, and cutting  $AB$  in  $c$ . Then as  $AH$  is equal to  $AF$ ,  $C$  and  $c$  will have the same altitude above the horizontal plane. Let  $Cc$  be joined, and we have one of the horizontals of the plane sought.

Draw  $xy$  perpendicular to  $Cc$  produced, and cutting it in  $C'$ .

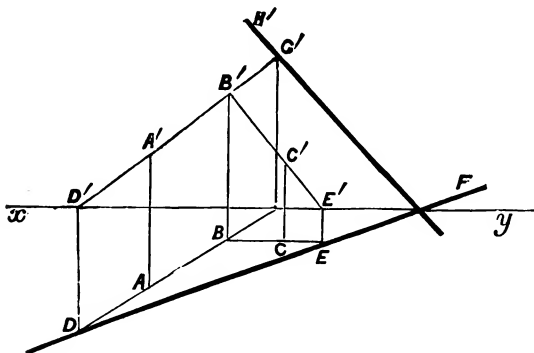
Project the point  $A$  to  $A'$ , and with centre  $C'$ , and radius  $C'A'$ , describe an arc  $A'e'$ .







Now, if two points are contained by a plane, it is evident that the line joining those two points must also be contained by that plane. Further, if a line be contained by a plane, the traces of that line are in the traces of the plane. The knowledge of these two principles is sufficient for the solution of this problem, for the required plane must contain each of the three lines  $AB$ ,  $BC$  and  $AC$ , the traces of which will be points in the traces of the plane.



Join  $A'B'$ ,  $AB$ ,  $B'C'$ ,  $BC$ , and produce  $B'A'$  beyond  $A'$  to meet  $xy$  in  $D'$ . Then a perpendicular to  $xy$  through  $D'$ , intersecting the plan of  $AB$  produced in  $D$ , gives one point in the required horizontal trace, and  $E$ , which is the horizontal trace of the line  $BC$ , is a second point in that trace. The line  $DF$  drawn through these points is the horizontal trace of the required plane. Find  $G'$ , the vertical trace of the line  $AB$ , and draw  $H'F$  through  $G'$  to meet  $DF$  in  $F$ . Then  $H'FD$  is the plane containing the three given points.

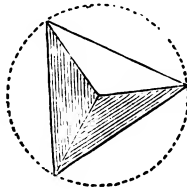
SECTION V.

FURTHER PROJECTIONS OF SOLIDS.

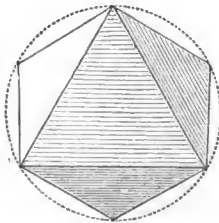
---

IN addition to the various solid figures already referred to in the previous sections, there are four other regular solids which must be mentioned, viz.—

- (A) The **Tetrahedron**, which is “a solid figure contained by four equal and equilateral triangles” (Euc. XI., Def. 26).

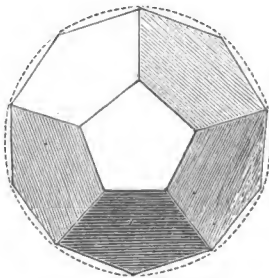


- (B) The **Octahedron**, which is “a solid figure contained by eight equal and equilateral triangles” (Euc. XI., Def. 27).

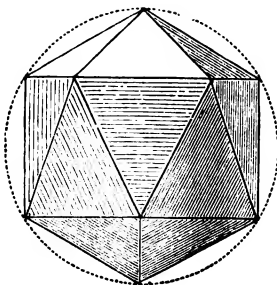


- (C) The **Dodecahedron**, which is “a solid figure contained by

twelve equal pentagons, which are equilateral and equiangular" (**Eucl. XI., Def. 28**).



(D) The **Icosahedron**, which is "a solid figure contained by twenty equal and equilateral triangles" (**Eucl. XI., Def. 29**).



### Problem 34.

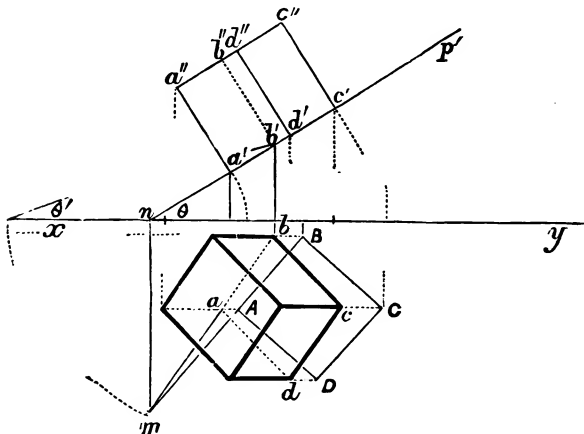
To construct the projections of a cube having a face and one of its edges inclined at given angles.

Let the face  $ABCD$  be inclined at an angle  $\theta$  to the horizon, and the edge  $BC$  at an angle  $\theta'$ ;  $\theta$  being greater than  $\theta'$ .

On  $xy$ , a line of level perpendicular to the trace  $mn$  of the plane of the base, make an elevation  $np'$  of this plane; in it place the line  $Bm$ , whose plan is  $bm$  inclined at an angle  $\theta$ ; construct the elevation

$a'b'd'c'$  of the base, by turning the square  $ABCD$  through the angle  $\theta$ , thence find its plan  $abcd$ .

The elevations of the edges perpendicular to the plane  $mnp'$  will be perpendicular to  $np'$ , and equal in length to the edge of the cube; draw  $a'a''$ ,  $b'b''$ ,  $d'd''$ , and  $c'c''$  at right angles to  $np'$ , and equal to  $BC$ ; then join  $a''c''$ , the figure  $a''c''$  will be the elevation; the plans of the



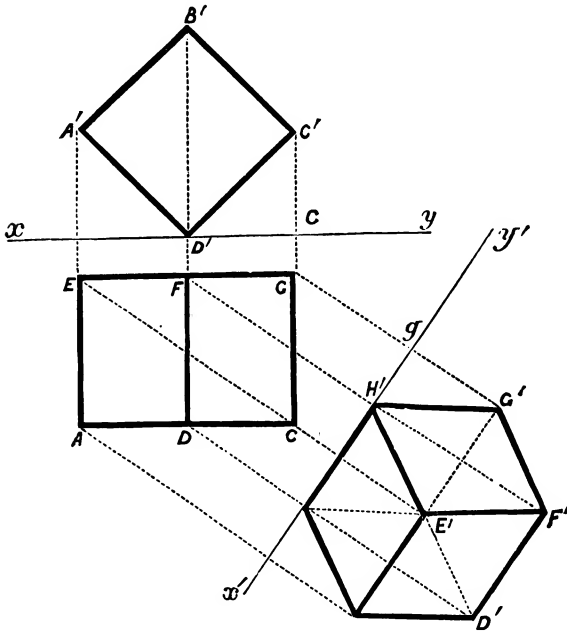
points  $a''b''d''c''$  will be the points in which perpendiculars to  $xy$ , drawn from these points, cut the parallels to  $xy$  drawn from  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $D$ , and  $C$ .

### Problem 35.

To find the projection of a cube when one of its diagonals is perpendicular to the plane of projection.

Construct a square  $A'B'C'D'$ , and let it represent a face of a cube. Draw  $xy$  perpendicular to  $B'D'$ , one of the diagonals of this face. Then taking  $A'B'C'D'$  as an elevation of the cube, its plan will be  $ADCEFG$ , as explained in **Pr. 9**. Join  $EC$ , one of the diagonals of the cube, and draw  $x'y'$  at right angles to it. Then the projection of the solid will be obtained as before. For example, the projection of  $G$  will be in the projector drawn from  $G$  at right angles to  $xy$ , and its height above  $xy$  is equal to  $cC'$ . Therefore make  $gG'$  equal to  $cC'$ . Also, the projection of  $F$  is  $F'$  found by setting off

$H'F'$  equal to  $D'B'$  along the projector drawn from  $F$ . Join  $G'F'$ . The points  $E', D',$  &c., are found in a similar manner.



**Problem 36.**

To draw the plan of a square when its surface is inclined  $42^\circ$ , and one of its sides is horizontal.

Here as the surface of the square is to be inclined  $42^\circ$ , we commence by assuming the traces of a plane inclined at that angle, and rotate the figure from a horizontal position into this plane.

Then  $cd$ , the horizontal trace, is perpendicular to  $xy$ , and the vertical trace makes an angle of  $42^\circ$  with it. The square  $ABCD$  must be drawn with  $AD$ , one of its sides parallel to  $cd$ . Through  $C$  and  $D$  projectors must be determined meeting  $xy$  in  $m'$  and  $n'$ .

Then with  $c$  as centre, describe the arcs  $m'C'$  and  $n'D'$ , intersecting the vertical trace in  $C'$  and  $D'$ .

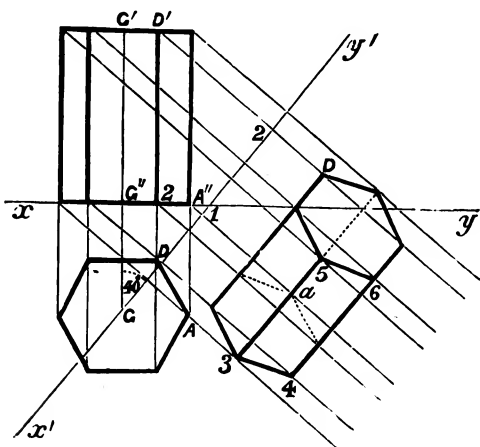
These arcs will thus represent the journey of the points  $C$  and  $D$  whilst being rotated into the plane  $e'cd$ .  $C'D'$  is thus the elevation



elevation will then be seen under quite a different aspect, viz., that of a solid tilted over.

Now in order to determine the plan, projectors must be drawn through every point of the elevation, at right angles with the assumed  $x'y'$ , and lengths must be measured along each of these projectors, equal to the distances of the points in the first plan, from the first base line  $xy$ . For example, take the point  $A$ , a projector  $a1$  passes through  $a$  at right angles to the new  $x'y'$ . The distance  $AA''$  is transferred along this projector to the point  $a$  beyond the ground line; that is,  $AA''$  is equal to  $1a$ . In the same manner, all the other points of the base are projected, and thus a new plan of it is obtained.

The plan of the other end of the solid is determined in like manner by projectors through its points in elevation. And as the



first plan is that of both ends, the distances to be measured along the projectors first drawn will be precisely the same as before. To illustrate this, take point  $D$ . The distance measured upon the projector beyond  $x'y'$  is equal to  $2D$ .

The whole plan is completed by joining the similar points in each base, as shown in the figure. We may notice, that lines which are parallel in the solid are still parallel, however they may be projected; e.g.,  $34$  is parallel to  $56$ .

A little consideration of the position of the solid will show that that part of the base in which  $A$  is situated is hidden, and that the opposite end is wholly seen in the plan. The edges being dotted indicate this.

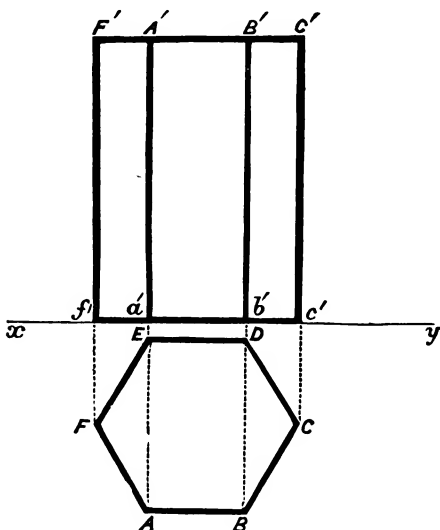


### Problem 38.

To draw the plan and elevation of a solid hexagonal column, the height of which is 30', and length of one side 10' on a scale of 20' to the inch; the front face being parallel to the vertical plane.

Here the plan will be a regular hexagon. Draw a line  $AB$  parallel to  $xy$ , in length half an inch; on it construct a regular hexagon,  $ABC$ , &c. This will be the required plan.

In order to find the elevation, we draw the projectors  $Aa'$ ,  $Bb'$ , &c. From  $a'b'c'f'$  raise perpendiculars  $a'A'$ ,  $b'B'$ ,  $c'C'$ , and  $f'F'$ , each  $1\frac{1}{2}$



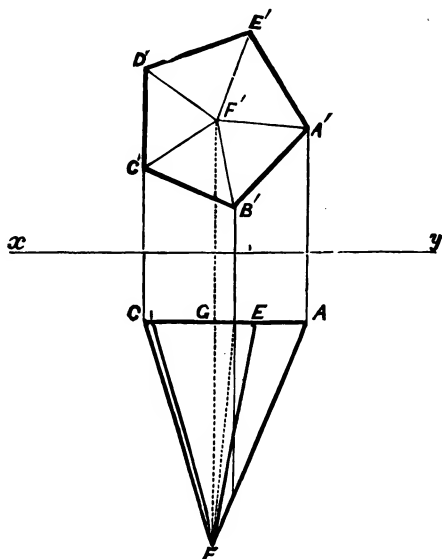
inch in height. Then through  $F'$ ,  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , draw a line parallel to  $xy$ , and the elevation, consisting of a series of rectangles, will be complete.

It may be remarked that the projectors from  $A$  and  $B$ , which are the angles at the base of the front face, are coincident with those that are drawn from  $E$  and  $D$ , and are therefore invisible. The rectangle  $A'a'b'B'$  is an elevation of the front face which rises up from  $AB$ , and also of the face which rises up from  $ED$ . Also, the rectangle  $Ff'a'A'$  is the elevation of the faces which rise up both from  $AF$  and  $FE$ ; as also the rectangle  $B'b'c'C'$  is the elevation of faces which rise up both from  $BC$  and  $DC$ .

### Problem 39.

To draw the plan of a pentagonal pyramid when one edge of its base is inclined at an angle of  $45^\circ$ .

Take a straight line  $A'B'$ , and let it be inclined to  $xy$  at an angle of  $45^\circ$ . Then upon  $A'B'$  construct a regular pentagon  $A'B'C'D'E'$ ,



and join each of the points  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , &c., to  $F'$  the centre, which is the vertex of the pyramid.

To find the plan of the pyramid; from  $F'$ , the vertex of the pyramid, draw  $F'F$ , and set off from  $F$ ,  $FG$  equal to the height of the pyramid.

The line  $FG$  represents the axis of the pyramid.

Through point  $G$ , draw a line parallel to  $xy$ , and from the points  $A'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $C'$ , &c., drop projectors, cutting this line in the points  $A$ ,  $E$ ,  $C$ , &c. Join each of these points to  $F'$ , and we have the required plan of the pyramid, having an edge of its base inclined at  $45^\circ$ .



angle  $O'B'M'$  expresses the inclination of the face of the pyramid to its base, and consequently to the horizontal plane.

Make  $A'O''$  equal to  $A'O'$ , and from  $A'$  draw  $A'E'$ , making the angle  $O'A'E'$  equal to  $O'B'M'$ .

Next produce  $CF$ ,  $DE$ , meeting  $xy$  in  $M'$  and  $N'$ , and from centre  $A'$ , with radii  $A'M'$ ,  $A'N'$ , describe arcs cutting  $A'E'$  in  $F'$ ,  $C'$ , and  $E'$ ,  $D'$ .

Join  $O'E'$ ,  $O'F'$ , which completes the elevation of the pyramid when resting on one of its faces. This will be understood by joining  $O'N'$ , when  $O'A'N'$  would be the elevation of the pyramid resting with its base upon the horizontal plane, and  $O'A'E'$  is  $O'A'N'$  after the latter has revolved until  $A'O'$  assumes the position of  $A'O''$ .

The plan is thus determined—the plan of  $C'$  is  $C$ , being the point of intersection let fall from  $C'$  with a line drawn from  $C$  parallel to  $xy$ . The plan of the other points may be similarly obtained.

### Problem 41.

*To project a hexagonal pyramid whose axis is inclined at an angle of  $50^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, but parallel to the vertical.*

The projections of the given pyramid having its axis parallel to the vertical plane, and at right angles to the horizontal plane, are shown in the following figure No. 1, its plan being a hexagon, and its elevation an isosceles triangle.

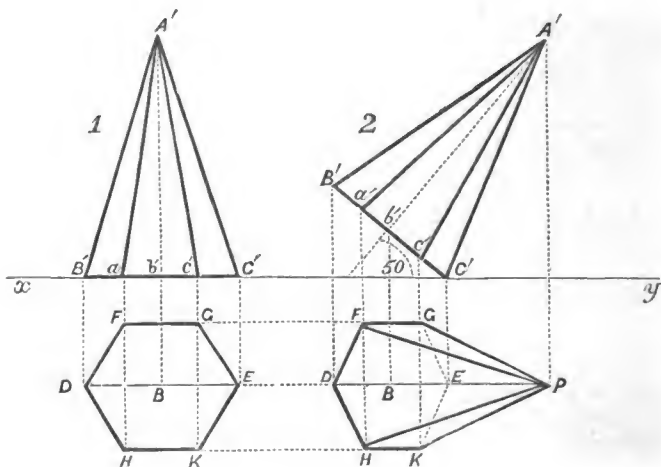
Place elevation No. 1 at the given inclination, for elevation No. 2.

The projection of the various points for the plan of the pyramid are found by letting fall perpendiculars from the various points in the elevation of No. 2 to intersect the parallels to  $xy$ , drawn from the corresponding points in the plan of No. 1. Hence the vertical projectors from  $B'$ ,  $b'$ ,  $C'$ ,  $A'$ , falling on the parallel  $DE$  produced, determine the position of these points on the plan. The projector from  $a'$ , which meets  $FG$  and  $HK$  produced (No. 1), determines the position of the angles  $F$  and  $H$  on the plan No. 2. And so the projector from  $c'$ , which meets  $FG$  and  $HK$  produced (No. 1), determines the positions of angles  $G$  and  $K$  in plan No. 2.

Join  $P$ , the plan of the apex of the pyramid, with  $D$ ,  $H$ ,  $K$ ,  $E$ ,  $G$ ,  $F$ , the contiguous angular points in the base, and the plan of the whole pyramid will be complete. The edges of the base  $GE$ ,  $EK$ , are dotted, because they are hidden by the body of the pyramid.

It will be seen that the axis  $BP$  and the diameter  $DE$  are in the same line, which is parallel to the vertical plane.

NOTE.—Four faces are seen in the plan: *e. g.*,  $PFG$  is the plan of the face of which  $FG$  is the plan in No. 1;  $PFH$  is the plan of the face of



which  $FD$  is the plan in No. 1;  $PDH$  is the plan of the face of which  $DH$  is the plan in No. 1; and  $PHK$  is the plan of the face of which  $HK$  is the plan in No. 1.

It will be observed that *two* faces are hidden in the inclined plan, *viz.*, those of which  $PGE$  and  $PKE$  are the plans.

## Problem 42.

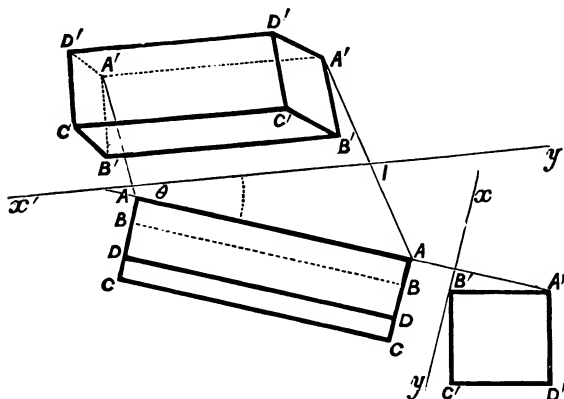
*The projections of any solid being given, to determine other projections from them.*

Let the figure  $AC$  be the plan of a square prism, of which  $A'B'C'D'$  is the end elevation. It is required to determine a new elevation upon a vertical plane, making an angle,  $\theta$ , with the long edges of the solid.

Assume  $x'y'$  making the required angle with either of the plans of the sides, as  $AA'$ .

Projectors through  $A, B, C,$  and  $D$  in the plan, at right angles to  $x'y'$ , will contain the required elevations of the points  $A'B'C'D'$ .

Now, as the heights of these points above the horizontal plane are shown in the given end elevation, it is only necessary to transfer



them from one elevation to the other. For example, the distance  $AA'$  is the same as  $A'A'$ .

Similarly, we obtain the elevation of the end  $A', B', C', D'$ ; and since the edges of the solid are parallel to the horizontal plane, the heights of the corners are the same as those of  $A, B, C, D$ .

### Problem 43.

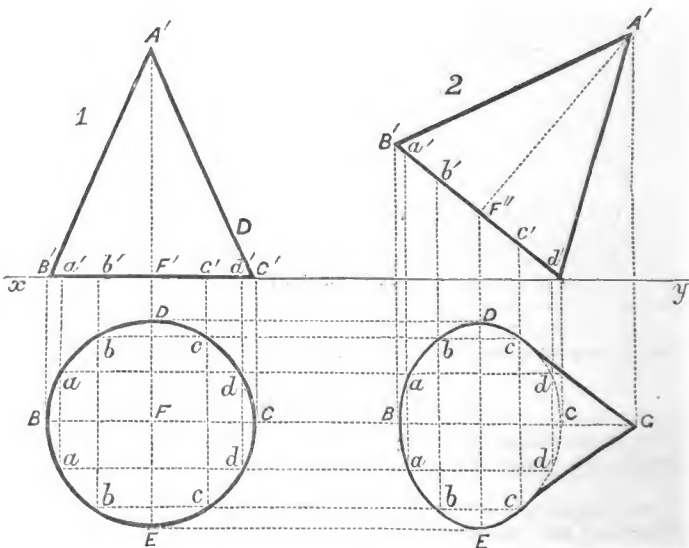
*To project a cone whose axis is inclined at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, but parallel to the vertical.*

The projections of a cone having its axis parallel to the vertical plane, and at right angles to the horizontal plane, are shown in the following figure No. 1, its *plan* being a *circle*, and its *elevation* an *isosceles triangle*.

Now, in order to project a cone whose axis is inclined at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, we draw  $B'C'$ , the elevation of the diameter of the cone at an angle of  $45^\circ$ ; because when the axis is inclined at  $45^\circ$ , the diameter of the base is also inclined at the same angle. Transfer the elevation  $B'A'C'$  of No. 1 to  $B'A'C'$  of No. 2. Draw a diameter  $BC$  on No. 1 parallel to  $xy$ , and another  $DE$  at right angles to it. Then the length of the diameter  $BC$  on plan No. 2 is determined by projectors dropped from  $B'$  and  $C'$  to meet the diameter  $BC$ , No. 1 produced.

The width of the diameter  $DE$  on plan No. 2 is the same as the width of diameter  $DE$  on plan No. 1, and is found by parallels to  $xy$  drawn from  $D$  and  $E$ , No. 1, to meet a projector dropped from  $F''$ , No. 2. It will now be seen that the plan of the circle No. 1 at an angle of  $45^\circ$ , as shown in No. 2, is an *ellipse*, of which  $BC$  and  $DE$  are the conjugate and transverse diameters. The points through which the curve of the ellipse passes are thus projected. On plan No. 1, mark off *any* points, e.g.,  $aa, bb, cc, dd$ , on each side of  $BC$ , and at equal distances from it. Join  $aa, bb, cc, dd$ , and produce the lines as projectors to  $B'C'$  in the points  $a', b', c', d'$ .

Now let these points be transferred to  $B'C'$ , the elevation of the diameter in No. 2, and from these transferred points drop projectors



to intersect the parallels to  $xy$  drawn from the corresponding points in plan No. 1. Then the curve of the ellipse passes through the points of intersection, which curve must be traced by hand.

The plan of the apex  $A'$  is found by projecting  $A'G$  on to the parallel  $BC$  produced. Tangents drawn from  $G$  to the curve of the ellipse, representing the sloping edges of the cone, will complete the plan of the whole cone.

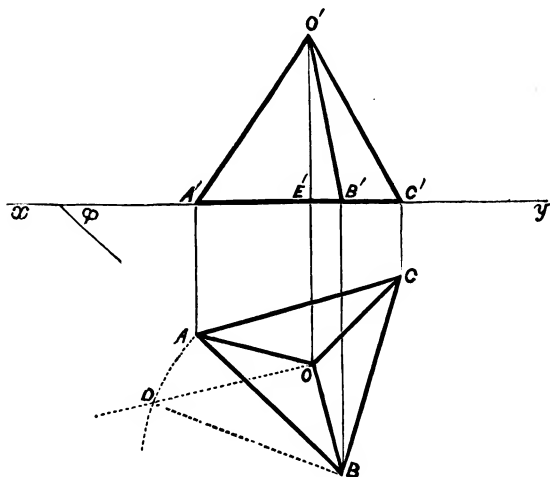
It will be seen that the tangents do not meet the curve in  $D$  and  $E$ .

**Problem 44.**

*To construct the projections of the tetrahedron.*

In this case we assume the given solid to rest on one of its faces on the horizontal plane.

Let  $AB$  be one of the edges resting on the horizontal plane, and inclined to the ground line at any given angle  $\phi$ . On  $AB$  describe the equilateral triangle  $ABC$ . Find  $O$ , the centre of the circum-



scribing circle, and join  $AO, BO, CO$ ; then  $O$  will be the plan of the vertex,  $ABC$  will be the plan of the base, and  $AO, BO, CO$ , will be the plans of the edges meeting in  $O$ .

From  $O$ , draw  $OD$  at right angles to  $OB$ ; then with  $B$  as centre, and  $BA$  as radius, describe an arc cutting  $OD$  in  $D$ ;  $OD$  will be the height of the pyramid. Draw  $AA', BB', CC'$ , and  $OO'$  perpendicular to  $xy$ ; make  $E'O'$  equal to  $OD$ ; then join  $A'O', B'O'$ , and  $C'O'$ , and the figure thus formed will be the elevation of the solid.

**Problem 45.**

*To construct the projections of the octahedron when its axis is vertical.*

In this case, the axis is assumed to be vertical; let  $AB$  be one

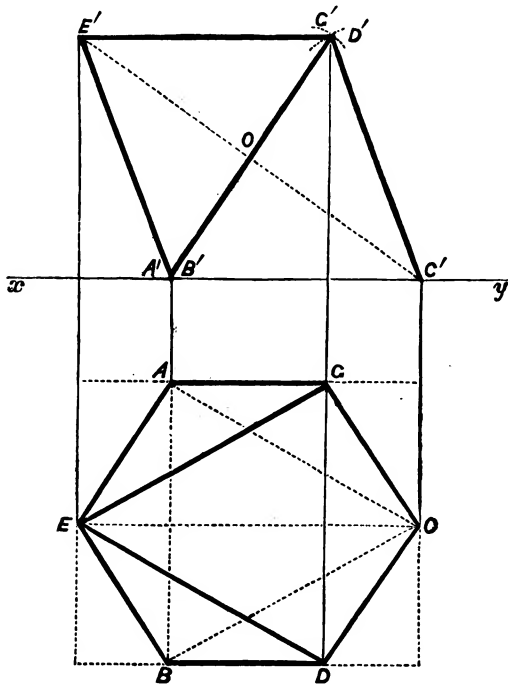




### Problem 46.

To construct the projections of the octahedron when it lies on its face on the horizontal plane.

In this case, the solid lies on one of its faces on the horizontal plane. Let  $ABC$  be the face in the horizontal plane, and  $xy$  parallel to the axis passing through  $E$ ; then if  $AB'$  and  $CC'$  are drawn at right angles to  $xy$ ,  $A'C'$  is the elevation of the face  $ABC$ .



Make  $A'G'$  equal to an edge of the solid;  $G'C'$  equal to  $B'C'$ ; draw  $C'E'$  perpendicular to  $A'G'$ , and bisected in  $O$ ; join  $A'E'$  and  $G'E'$ , thus completing the elevation.

Next, in order to project the plan, we proceed thus.

From  $D$ , drop a projector perpendicular to  $xy$  to meet the lines  $BD, AG$ , drawn parallel to the axis  $EC$  in  $D$  and  $G$ . Join  $DE, GE$ ;

Q

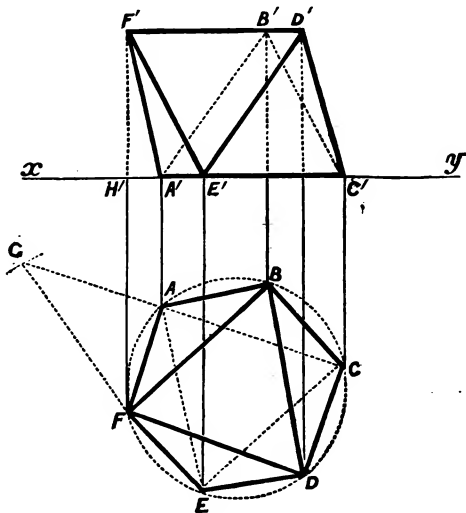
then  $EGD$  will be the plan of the surface  $ED'$ . Next join  $AE$ ,  $EB$ ,  $DC$ ,  $CG$ , to complete the required plan.

### Problem 47.

To construct the plan and elevation of an octahedron when resting on one of its faces, and when one edge of this face makes an angle of  $15^\circ$  with the vertical plane.

Draw  $CA$  inclined to  $xy$  at an angle of  $15^\circ$ , and upon it describe an equilateral triangle  $ACE$ . Describe a circle about the triangle, and in it inscribe a regular hexagon,  $ABCDEF$ . Join  $FD$ ,  $DB$ , and  $BF$ , which completes the plan of the solid.

Now as the face  $ACE$  rests on the horizontal plane, the points  $A$ ,  $C$ ,  $E$ , will be projected on  $xy$  in  $A'$ ,  $C'$ ,  $E'$ . We now proceed to



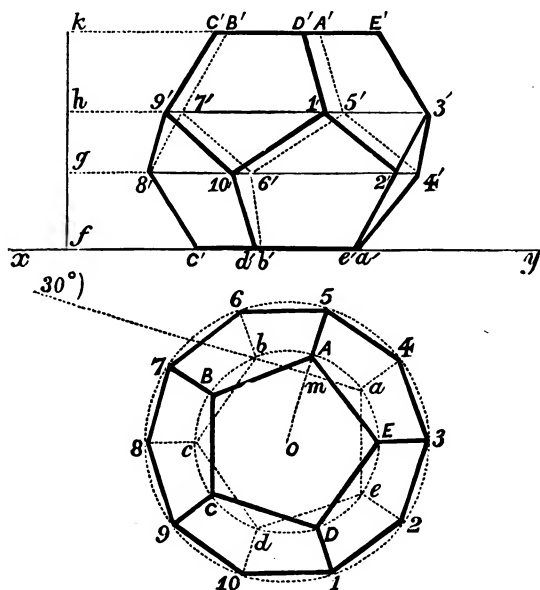
find the height of the given solid. Since  $FA$  is the projection of a line of which  $FB$  is the real length, draw  $AG$  at right angles to  $AF$ , and with centre  $F$  and radius  $FB$ , describe an arc intersecting  $AG$  in  $G$ ; then  $AG$  is the height of the solid.

Make  $H'F'$  equal to  $AG$ , and draw a line parallel to the ground line. Cut this line in the points  $F'$ ,  $B'$ ,  $D'$ , with perpendiculars from  $F$ ,  $B$ ,  $D$ . Then join  $F'A'$ ,  $F'E'$ ;  $B'A'$ ,  $B'C'$ ; and  $D'C'$ ,  $D'E'$ ; which completes the elevation of the solid.

### Problem 48.

To draw the **plan and elevation** of a dodecahedron, when one edge of its base is inclined at an angle of  $30^\circ$  to the ground line.

Take a straight line  $ab$ , and let it be inclined to the ground line at an angle of  $30^\circ$ , and upon it describe the regular pentagon  $abcde$ . Describe a circle about  $abcde$ . Then bisect each side of the pentagon, and draw straight lines through the points of bisection and the opposite angles. These lines will cut the circumference of the circle in  $A, B, C, D, E$ . Join these points, and make  $m5$  equal to  $mo$ , and



from centre  $o$ , with radius  $o5$ , describe a circle. By means of the lines already drawn, divide this circle into ten equal parts in the points 1, 2, 3, . . . . . 10; and join these points.

To find the elevation of the dodecahedron, project the points  $a, b, c, d, e$ , on the base line. We next find the height of any of the points 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, above the points  $a, b$ , &c. Thus take the point 10; the line  $d10$  is the projection of a line whose real length is equal

to  $ab$ , &c. We then find the height of 10 above  $d$ , as previously shown, and set it off on the perpendicular from  $f$  to  $g$ .

We now find the height of any of the points 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, above the points 2, 4, 6, 8, 10. For instance, from 9 to 10 is the projection of a line whose real length is  $ab$ , &c. Thus the height of 9 above 10 is found as before, and is  $gh$ .

Lastly, make  $hk$  equal to  $fg$ , and through  $g, h, k$ , draw lines parallel to  $xy$ . The points  $A, B, C, D, E$ , will be projected on the line drawn from  $k$ , the points 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, on the line drawn from  $g$ , and points 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, will be on the line from  $h$ .

Then let the points in elevation be joined in the same order as in the plan.

## SECTION VI.—SECTIONS.

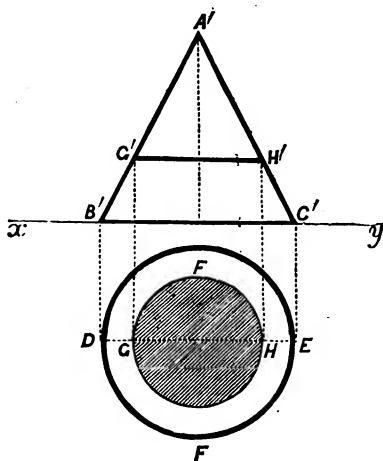
---

IN the preceding sections, we have treated on the plans and elevations of the various solids as *wholes*. Now it is often necessary to furnish certain essential details respecting a solid figure, which cannot be obtained by either plans or elevations. To this end, certain *portions* of it are shown, termed *sections*; the consideration of which forms the subject of the present section.

### Problem 49.

*To draw the section of a cone when cut by a plane parallel to its base.*

Let the triangle  $B'A'C'$  represent the elevation of the given cone,



and the circle  $DEF$  its plan, also let  $G'H'$  be the elevation of a section plane cutting the cone parallel to its base  $B'C'$ .

Draw  $DE$ , the diameter of the plan, parallel to  $xy$ , and from  $G'$  and  $H'$  draw projectors cutting  $DE$  in  $G$  and  $H$ . Then the line  $GH$  is the diameter of the plan of the section. On  $GH$  construct the circle  $GFH$ , which will be the plan of the section of the cone cut off by the plane  $GH$ .

Then let the section be shaded by parallel lines drawn at an angle of  $45^\circ$ , as is usual when sectional drawings are indicated.

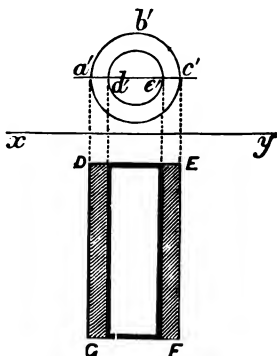
NOTE 1.—If the cone be cut by a plane passing through its axis, the section will be a *triangle*.

NOTE 2.—There are other sections of a cone, such as the ellipse, the hyperbola, and the parabola.

### Problem 50.

*To draw the section of a hollow pipe.*

Let  $a'b'c'$  represent the elevation of the end of a pipe of which  $DEFG$  is the plan, and let  $a'e$  be the elevation of the section plane. Drop projectors at right angles to  $xy$  from the points where the section plane cuts the figure, as  $a'd'e'c'$ . In consequence of the section



plane dividing the figure exactly in half, the projections of the lines represented by the points  $a'e$  will exactly coincide with the lines in the plan  $DG, EF$ .

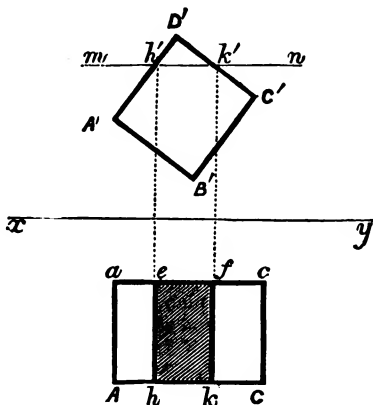
Also, the plan of the semicircle  $a'c'$  will coincide with the line  $GF$ .  $DE$  represents the plan of the other semicircular end of the pipe. It only remains, therefore, to show the *thickness*, which is done by means of the projectors drawn from  $d'e$  parallel to  $DG$  and  $EF$ .

### Problem 51.

To find the section of the cube given at Pr. 9.

Let  $mn$  be the section plane, then  $mn$  represents a horizontal plane, i.e., a plane at right angles to the vertical plane.

It will thus be seen that the cube is cut from the anterior face (from the face turned towards the eye) to the posterior face (the face



turned from the eye). The section produced will be an oblong, having its breadth equal to  $h'k'$ , and length equal to the edge of the cube.

In order to represent the section, find first the plan of the whole cube, as in Pr. 9. From  $h'$  and  $k'$  drop perpendiculars, and we obtain  $efkh$ , the plan of the required section.

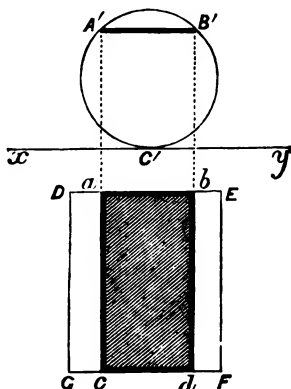
### Problem 52.

To draw the section of a cylinder lying on the ground with its ends parallel to the vertical plane, and at right angles to the horizontal plane; the plane of section being parallel to the axis of the cylinder.

Let  $A'B'C'$  represent the elevation of a cylinder lying on the ground, and  $DEFG$  its plan. Also let  $A'B'$  represent the elevation of the section plane cutting the cylinder parallel to its axis.



Now as the section plane is parallel to the axis, it is clear that the plan of the section will be a rectangle. In order to determine the



position of this rectangle on the plan, drop perpendiculars from  $A'$  and  $B'$ , cutting the ends of the plan in  $a$  and  $c$ ; and in  $b$  and  $d$ ; then  $abcd$  is the plan of the required section.

**NOTE.**—If a cylinder be cut by a plane parallel to its base, the section will be a circle.

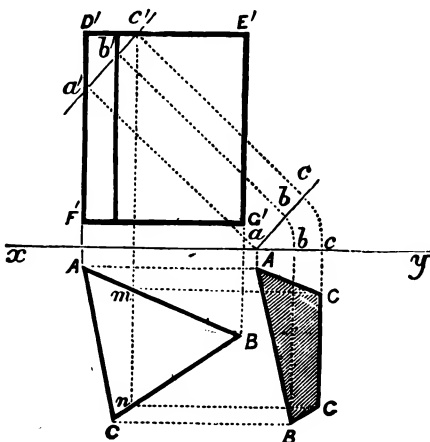
### Problem 53.

*To project the section of a triangular prism when cut by an oblique plane.*

Let  $ABC$  be the plan, and  $D'EFG'$  the elevation of a prism which is cut by the section  $a'b'c'$  oblique to its axis. From points  $a'$  and  $b'$ , where the section passes through the angles of the prism, also from point  $c'$ , where the section passes through the end, draw the projectors  $a'a$ ,  $b'b$ ,  $c'c$ , to any line  $ac$  parallel to  $a'c'$ . Next from  $c'$  draw the projector  $c'n$  at right angles to  $xy$ , and crossing the sides of the prism on the plan at the points  $m$  and  $n$ .

From  $a$  as centre, draw the arcs  $bb$  and  $cc$  to  $xy$ ; and from the points  $abc$ , where these arcs cut  $xy$ , draw projectors at right angles to  $xy$ , which intersect the projectors drawn from the points  $A$ ,  $C$ ,  $n$ , and  $m$ , on the plan of the oblique section parallel to  $xy$ . Then the point  $A$ , where the projector from  $A$  and  $a$  intersect, will be one angle of projection, and  $B$ , where the projectors from  $b$  and  $c$  inter-

sect will be another; whilst the other points of projection will be  $C$  and  $C$ , where the projector from  $c$  intersects those from  $m$  and  $n$ .



Join the angles of intersection  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $C$  by straight lines, and the trapezium  $ABCC$  is the required projection of the oblique section.

### Problem 54.

To construct the sectional elevation of a tetrahedron upon a vertical plane parallel to the section plane, the trace of which is at right angles to one of the lateral edges of the solid.

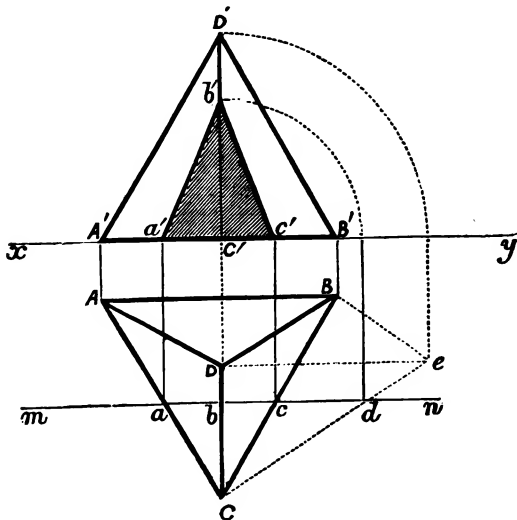
Take  $AB$ , and upon it describe an equilateral triangle  $ABC$ . Find  $D$ , the centre of the triangle, and join  $DA$ ,  $DB$ ,  $DC$ . We have thus the plan of the tetrahedron when its base is horizontal.

Next, draw  $mn$ , the trace of the section plane, at right angles to  $DC$ , and assume this plane to be vertical. We now proceed to find the elevation of the whole solid. In order to do this, we must know the height of  $D$  above  $A$ ,  $B$ ,  $C$ . As each of the triangles  $DAB$ ,  $DBC$ , and  $DAC$  is equilateral, the real length of  $DA$ ,  $DB$ ,  $DC$ , is expressed by any of the edges of the base as  $AB$ ,  $AC$ ; consequently from  $D$  raise a perpendicular to  $DC$  indefinitely, and with centre  $C$ , and radius  $CB$ , describe an arc, cutting this perpendicular in  $e$ , and join  $Ce$ .

The points  $A$ ,  $C$ ,  $B$ , are projected on  $xy$  in  $A'C'B'$ ; then since  $D$  is

elevated above these points a distance  $De$ ; make  $C'D'$  equal to this distance, and join  $D'A'$ ,  $D'C'$ , and  $D'B'$ .

Now, the section plane cuts  $AC$ ,  $CB$ , in  $a$  and  $c$ , and the projections of these are  $a'$  and  $c'$ . It now remains to find the elevation



of  $b$ , the point in which the plane cuts  $DC$ . It will be seen that  $b$  is elevated above  $C$ , a distance  $bd$ ; therefore, make  $C'b'$  equal to  $bd$ , and join  $b'a'$ ,  $b'c'$ , which will complete the sectional elevation.

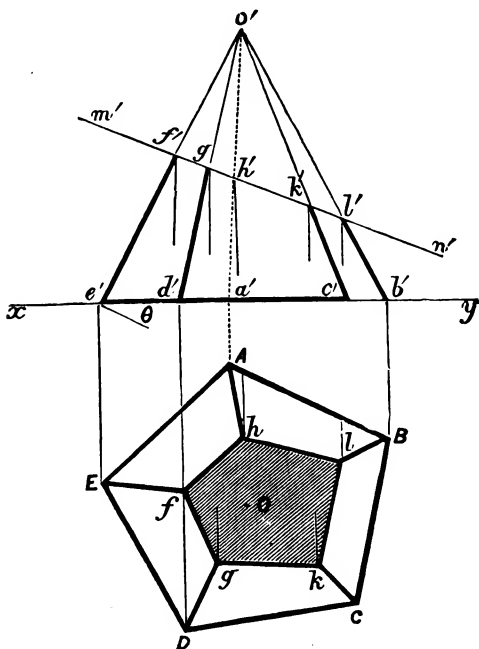
### Problem 55.

*To construct the sectional plan and elevation of a pentagonal pyramid standing on its base on the horizontal plane.*

Let  $AB$  be one edge of the base inclined to  $xy$  at any angle  $\theta$ , on  $AB$  describe the regular pentagon  $ABCDE$ , and find  $O$  the centre of the circumscribed circle. Join  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$ , and  $OE$ ; this will be the plan of the required pyramid. Draw  $OO'$  at right angles to  $xy$ , and make  $O'a'$  equal to the perpendicular height of the pyramid; draw  $Aa'$ ,  $Bb'$ ,  $Cc'$ ,  $Dd'$ , and  $Ee'$  perpendicular to  $xy$ , and join  $O'a'$ ,  $O'b'$ ,  $O'c'$ ,  $O'd'$ , and  $O'e'$ , which will complete the elevation of the pyramid.

We now proceed to construct the plan of a section made by a plane perpendicular to the vertical plane, its trace  $m'n'$  making with

$xy$  the angle  $\theta$ . Let the trace  $m'n'$  meet the elevations  $e'O$ ,  $d'O$ ,  $a'O$ ,  $c'O$ , and  $b'O$  in the points  $f'$ ,  $g'$ ,  $h'$ ,  $k'$ ,  $l'$ , respectively; then the plans  $f, g, h, k, l$ , will be found by drawing  $f'f$ ,  $g'g$ ,  $h'h$ ,  $k'k$ , and  $l'l$  perpen-



dicular to  $xy$ ; and meeting  $EO$ ,  $DO$ ,  $AO$ ,  $CO$ , and  $BO$  in  $fghkl$  respectively. Then the figure  $fghkl$  will be the sectional plan required.

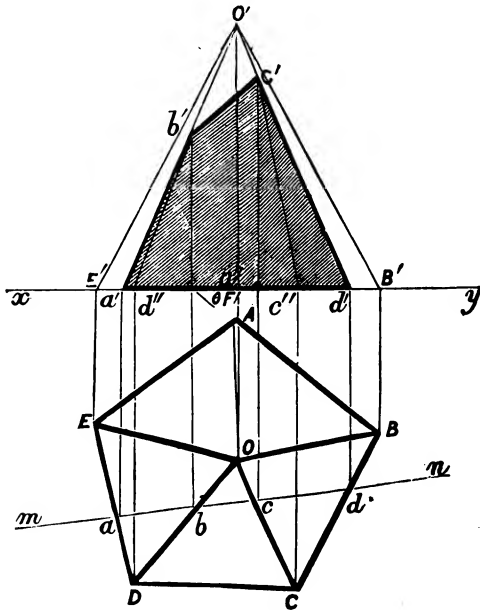
### Problem 56.

To construct the sectional elevation and plan of a pentagonal pyramid standing on its base on the horizontal plane.

Let  $AB$  be one edge of the base inclined to  $xy$  at any angle  $\theta$ ; on  $AB$  describe the regular pentagon  $ABCDE$ , and find  $O$  the centre of the circumscribed circle; join  $OA$ ,  $OB$ ,  $OC$ ,  $OD$ , and  $OE$ ; this will be the plan of the required pyramid. Draw  $OO'$  at right angles to  $xy$ , and make  $O'F'$  equal to the perpendicular height of the pyramid;

draw  $Aa''$ ,  $BB'$ ,  $Cc''$ ,  $Dd''$ , and  $EE'$  perpendicular to  $xy$ , and join  $a''O'$ ,  $B'O'$ ,  $c''O'$ ,  $d''O'$ , and  $E'O'$ , which will complete the elevation of the pyramid.

We next proceed to construct the elevation of a section made by a vertical plane whose trace  $mn$  makes with  $xy$  an angle  $\theta$ ; let this trace cut  $ED$ ,  $DO$ ,  $OC$ , and  $CB$  in the points  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ , respectively; then  $a$  and  $d$  being points in the horizontal plane, their elevations will be in the base line; draw  $aa'$  and  $dd'$  at right angles to  $xy$ ; then



$a'$  and  $d'$  will be the elevations of  $a$  and  $d$ ;  $b$  and  $c$  also are the plans of points in the straight lines whose elevations are  $c'O'$  and  $d''O'$ ; if therefore from  $b$  and  $c$  straight lines be drawn at right angles to  $xy$ , and meeting  $d''O'$  and  $c'O'$  in  $b'$  and  $c'$ , then  $b'$  and  $c'$  will be the elevations corresponding to  $b$  and  $c$ . Join  $a'b'$ ,  $b'c'$ , and  $c'd'$ ; then the figure  $a'b'c'd'$  will be the sectional elevation required.

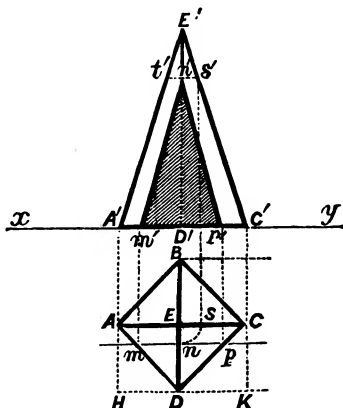
### Problem 57.

To draw the vertical projection of the section of a square pyramid parallel to the section plane, the trace of the plane, which

is vertical, being at right angles to the plan of one of the lateral edges of the pyramid.

First, construct the square  $ABCD$ ; join the diagonals  $AC, BD$ , and we have the plan of the pyramid; the point  $E$ , where the diagonals cut each other, being its vertex. We now draw  $mnp$ , the trace of the section plane, at right angles to any of the lateral edges of the pyramid, as  $ED$ . Draw  $xy$  parallel to  $mnp$ . We now find the elevation of the pyramid, which is  $E'A'C'$ . The points  $m$  and  $p$ , being two points in the base, will be projected in  $m'$  and  $p'$ , and there remains only to find the elevation of the point  $n$ .

The vertical projection of  $ED$  is  $E'D'$  at right angles to  $xy$ ; and to determine  $n$  in  $E'D'$  we want a separate construction. Now, what we require is to find the height of  $n$  above the horizontal plane,



which height must be set off from  $D'$  along  $D'E'$ . This can be done by finding the elevation of  $ED$  when viewed at right angles to a vertical plane conceived to pass through it, that is, in the direction of  $AC$ .

Now we have such an elevation of  $EC$  in  $E'C'$ , the vertical projection of  $EC$ . Hence, transfer the point  $n$  to  $s$ , by describing an arc, with centre  $E$ , and radius  $En$  to cut  $EC$  in  $s$ .

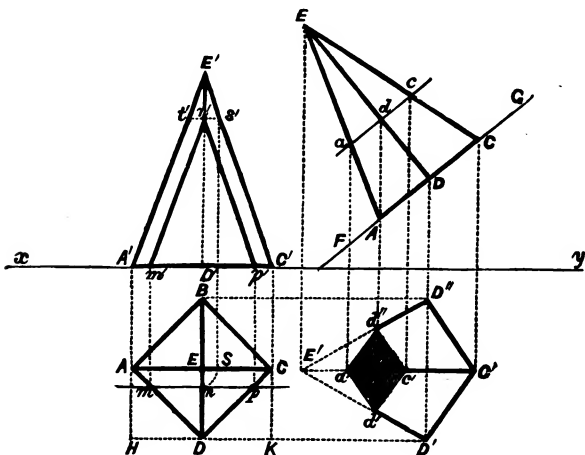
Find  $s'$ , the elevation of  $s$  in  $E'C'$ , and draw  $s't'$  parallel to  $xy$ ; the point  $n'$ , in which  $t's'$  intersects  $E'D'$  is the vertical projection of  $n$ . Join  $n'm'$ , and  $n'p'$ , and we obtain the required section.

### Problem 58.

To draw the horizontal projection of the section of a square pyramid, when cut by a plane parallel to its base, the plane of the base of the pyramid being inclined at  $40^\circ$ .

First construct the square  $ABCD$ ; join the diagonals  $AC$ ,  $BD$ , and we have the plan of the pyramid; the point  $E$ , where the diagonals cut each other, being its vertex. Draw  $FG$ , inclined to  $xy$ , at an angle of  $40^\circ$ . Then draw  $HDK$  parallel to  $xy$ , and set off upon  $FG$ ,  $AD$ , and  $DC$  equal respectively to  $HD$  and  $DK$ . From  $D$ , erect  $DE$  perpendicular to  $FG$ . Join  $E'A$ ,  $E'C$ , and we have an elevation of the pyramid upon the plane  $FG$ .

Its plan will be found as previously shown. We have now to project the section upon the plan. Draw  $adc$  parallel to  $FG$ , to represent the section plane. If the projection of one point in the



section be understood, it will be easily seen how to find the others. For example, the point  $c$  is a point in the lateral edge  $EC$ . Now, the plan of  $EC$  is  $E'C'$ , hence the plan of  $c$  must be in  $E'C'$ , viz.  $c'$ .

For a similar reason, the plan of  $d$  must be in  $E'D'$ , viz.  $d'$ . The point  $d$  represents one diagonal of the section, as  $D$  represents a diagonal of the base of the pyramid. It is clear that the other extremity of this diagonal must be in  $E'D'$ ; and since it must also be in the projector let fall from  $d$ , it will be in  $d''$ . Now, the plan

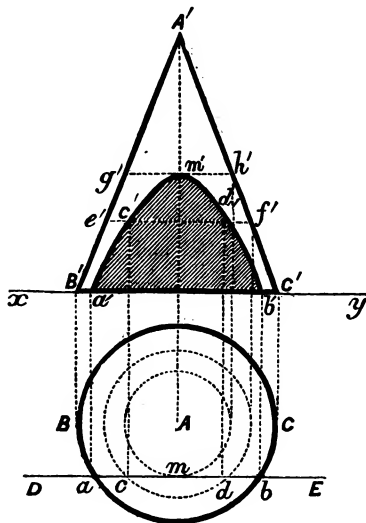
of  $a$  is  $a'$  on  $E'C'$ ; because the plan of  $EA$  will be on  $E'C'$ . Join the points  $a'd'c'd''$ , and we have the horizontal projection of the required section.

NOTE.—The lines  $E'd''$ ,  $E'a'$ , and  $E'd'$  are dotted in the figure, because this part of the pyramid is supposed to be removed.

### Problem 59.

To draw the sectional elevation of a right cone, when cut by a vertical plane.

Let  $ABC$  and  $A'B'C'$  be the plan and elevation of the given cone,  $DE$  being the trace of the cutting plane. The plane  $DE$  cuts the base of the cone in points  $a, b$ , whose elevations are  $a', b'$  in  $B', C'$ . We have now found two points in the required section. From centre  $A$ , describe a circle cutting  $DE$  in points  $c, d$ . This circle represents



the base of another cone, the elevation of which is  $A'e'f'$ . Now  $c$  and  $d$  are two points in the base of the second cone, in the same manner as  $a$  and  $b$  are two points in the base of the given cone, and their elevations will be upon  $e'f'$ , just as the elevations of  $a, b$  are upon  $B'C'$ . We thus get  $c'd'$ , two more points in the required section. Further, from centre  $A$  describe a circle tangential to  $DE$ , and touching it at



*m.* This circle represents the base of a third cone, whose elevation is  $A'gh'$ . The elevation of  $m$  is  $m'$ , which gives the height of the section. Through points  $a', c', m', d', b'$ , describe a curve as shown in the diagram, and thus obtain the section required.

NOTE.—The curve which shows the outline of the section is a *hyperbola*.

### Problem 60.

*To find the projection of a cone standing on its base, when the section plane is perpendicular to the vertical plane, and making an angle with the horizontal plane; also a projection of the cone, showing the true form of the section.*

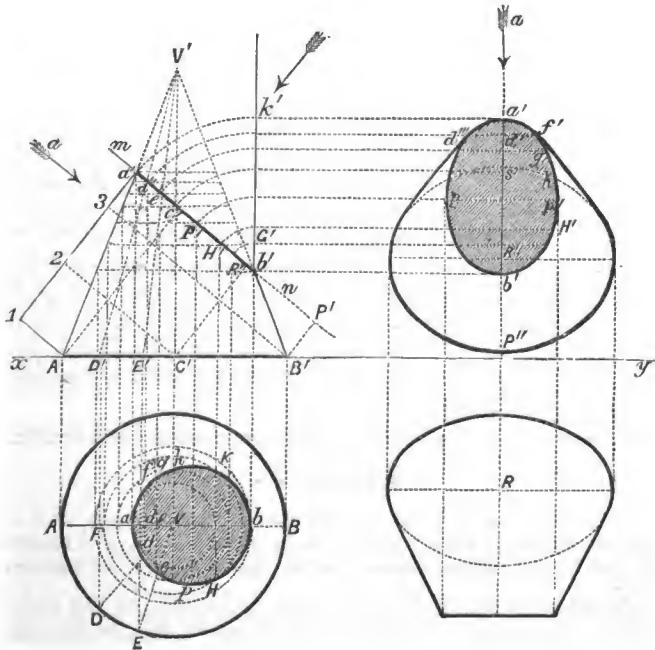
First, through the vertex of the cone draw a line  $V'E'$  to any point within the base  $A'B'$ ; this line is to be considered as the vertical projection of a generatrix of the cone, and the point  $e'$  where it cuts the line  $mn$ , is the projection of that point on the surface of the solid, where the cutting plane actually passes through the generatrix  $E'V'$ . The point  $e'$  may be projected upon the plan by letting fall a perpendicular from  $E'$ , cutting the circumference of the base in  $E$ , and joining  $EV$ ; then another perpendicular let fall from  $e'$  will intersect  $EV$  in a point  $e$ , which will be the horizontal projection of a point in the required curve. By drawing another line, *e.g.*,  $V'D'$ , and projecting its point of intersection  $d'$  with the cutting plane, to  $d$ , a second point in the curve is obtained; and so on for any number of points required.

The exterior generatrices  $A'V'$  and  $B'V'$ , being both projected upon the line  $AB$ , the extreme limits of the curve sought will be at the points  $a$  and  $b$ , on that line, which are the projections of the points of intersection  $a'$  and  $b'$ , of the cutting plane with the outlines of the cone. And, as the line  $ab$  will clearly divide the curve symmetrically into two equal parts, the points  $f, g, h$ , &c., will be readily obtained by setting off above that line, and on their respective perpendiculars, the distances,  $dd, ee$ , &c. A sufficient number of points having thus been determined, the curve drawn through them (which will be found to be an ellipse) will be the outline of the required section.

This curve may be obtained by another, and perhaps simpler method, depending on the principle that all sections of a cone by planes parallel to the base are circles. Thus, let line  $F'G'$  represent a cutting plane; the section which it makes with the cone will be denoted, on the horizontal projection, by a circle drawn from the centre  $V$  with a radius equal to half the line  $F'G'$ ; and by projecting the point of intersection  $H'$ , of the horizontal and oblique planes, by a perpendicular  $H'H$ , and noting where this line cuts the circle above referred to, we obtain the points  $H$  and  $K$  in the curve

required. Similarly, any number of additional points may be found.

**Secondly**, let the cutting plane  $mn$  be conceived to turn upon the point  $b'$ , so as to coincide with the vertical line  $b'k'$ , and let  $b'k'$  be transferred to  $a'b'$ , which will represent as before the extreme limits of the required curve. Now, taking any point, such as  $d'$ , it is clear that in this new position of the cutting plane, it will be represented by  $d''$ , and that if we make the further supposition that the cutting plane were turned upon  $a'b'$ , as an axis, till it should be



parallel to the vertical plane, the point which had been projected at  $d''$  would then have described round  $a'b'$  an arc of a circle whose radius is the distance  $dd$ , No. 2. This distance, therefore, being set off at  $d'''$  and  $f'$ , on each side of  $a'b'$ , gives two points in the required curve. By a similar mode of operation, *any* number of points may be obtained, through which, if we draw a curve, it will be an ellipse, of the true form and dimensions of the section. Or, having found the axes, major and minor, the ellipse may be constructed by any of the methods referred to in *Plane Geometry*.

R

**Further**, to complete the projection of the cone when seen in this new position ; if we look at No. 1 in the direction of the arrow  $k$ , which is at right angles to the section plane, it will be seen that by using this plane as the plane of projection, all the points necessary for the figure may be obtained upon it. For example, the base of the cone  $A'B$ , whose true form is a circle, being at an angle with this plane, its projection will be an ellipse. From  $B$ ,  $C$ , and  $A'$ , draw projectors to meet the line  $mn$  in  $P'$ , &c. From  $P'$ , take the distance  $P'b'$ , and set it off from  $b'$  to  $P''$ . Now the point  $R'$  will represent the centre of the base. Take  $P'R'$ , and set it off from  $P''$  to  $R''$ , and the same distance from  $R''$  to  $S'$ ; then  $P''$  and  $S'$  will be the projections of the *minor* axis of the ellipse. Through  $R'$ , draw a line parallel to  $xy$  and make it equal to  $A'B$  for the *major* axis. An ellipse described about these axes is the base of the cone, and lines drawn tangential to the two ellipses will complete the figure.

**Lastly**, to obtain the *plan* of this figure, it will be viewed in the direction of arrow  $a$ . From  $a'$ , draw a line at right angles to  $mn$ . If we conceive this line to represent an edge view of the plan of projection, projectors drawn from the points of the figure will represent on this line the projections required, as shown in No. 1.

Take any point,  $R$ , on the line  $a'P''$  produced, and through it draw a line parallel to  $xy$ ; this will represent the *major* axis of the ellipse as seen in the figure. To obtain the *minor* axis, set off from  $R$ , the distances 1 2, and 2 3, and complete the ellipse by any of the ordinary methods. It will be seen that the plan of the section plane in this position becomes a straight line, whose breadth is determined by dropping projectors from  $p$  and  $p'$ .

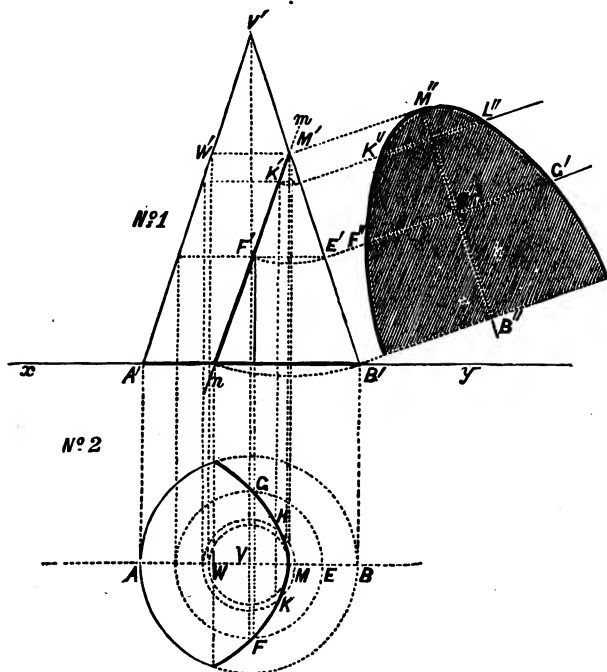
### Problem 61.

*To find the projection of a cone standing on its base, when the section plane is parallel to one side of the cone, and perpendicular to the vertical plane ; also the true form of the section.*

By following the method laid down previously, we can readily obtain any number of points, as  $F$ ,  $G$ ,  $K$ ,  $W$ , &c., in the curve representing the horizontal projection of the section specified. It must be remarked that the horizontal plane passing through  $M'$  gives only one point  $M$  (which is the vertex of the curve required), because the circle which denotes the section that it makes with the cone is a tangent to the given plane.

In order to determine the actual outline of this curve, let us suppose the plane  $mn$  to turn, as upon a pivot at  $M'$ , until it has assumed the position  $M'B$ , and transfer  $M'B$  parallel to itself, to  $M''B'$ . The point  $F'$  will thus have first described the arc  $F'E'$  till it reaches the point  $E'$ , which is then projected to  $E''$ ; so that, if we

conceive the given plane, now represented by  $M''B''$ , to turn upon that line as an axis, until it assumes a position parallel to the vertical plane, we shall find that the point  $E''$ , which is distant from the



axis  $M''B''$  by the distance  $FV$ , No. 2, will now be projected to  $F''$ , No. 1. The same distance  $FV$ , set off on the other side of the axis  $M''B''$ , gives another point  $G'$  in the curve required, which is that called the *parabola*.

## SECTION VII.

### PENETRATIONS OF SOLIDS.

---

THE preceding sections being thoroughly understood, the following problems will present no difficulty to the student. All three relate to cylinders, and are of an elementary character.

#### Problem 62.

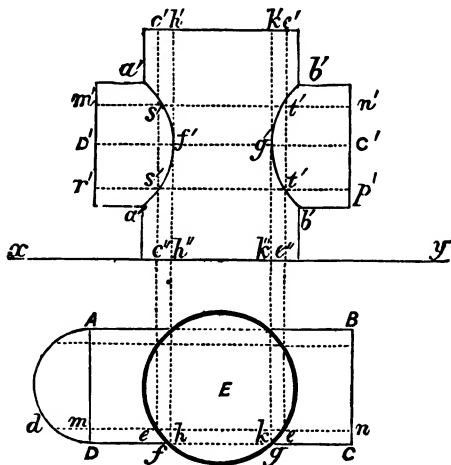
*To draw the curve of penetration of two right cylinders, whose axes are at right angles to each other.*

Let  $ABCD$  be the plan of the horizontal cylinder, and the circle  $E$  the plan of the vertical cylinder. Find the vertical projection of the two cylinders. Thus we get four points in the curve of penetration required, viz.,  $a', a', b', b'$ . Draw  $mn$  parallel to  $DC$ , and let it represent a section plane at right angles to the horizontal plane, cutting both cylinders. Now, this plane cuts the vertical cylinder in a rectangle whose elevation is  $c'c''e''e'$ , which is found by raising perpendiculars from the points  $c$  and  $e$ , where the plane  $mn$  cuts the circle  $E$ .

The plane  $mn$  also cuts the horizontal cylinder in a rectangle, the elevation of which is  $m'n'p'r'$ . It is found thus;—On  $DA$  a semicircle is described, representing half the base or end of the cylinder  $ABCD$ . Produce  $mn$  to meet the circumference of the semicircle in  $d$ . The ordinate  $md$  represents half the width of the rectangle, which is the section of the horizontal cylinder by the plane  $mn$ . Hence, from  $D'$  ( $D'C'$  is the elevation of  $DC$ ) set off  $D'm'$ ,  $D'r'$ , each equal to  $md$ , and through  $m'r'$  draw  $m'n'$ ,  $r'p'$  parallel to  $D'C'$ . The

rectangle  $d'c'e'e'$  intersects the rectangle  $m'r'p'n'$  in the points  $s's'$  and  $t't'$ . We have thus found two more points in the required curve.

Lastly, taking  $DC$  as another section plane, this plane cuts the vertical cylinder in a rectangle, whose elevation is  $h'h''k''k'$ , found by erecting perpendiculars from the points  $h, k$ , where  $DC$  intersects the circle. Now, this rectangle intersects  $D'C'$  in  $f'$  and  $g'$ , the elevations of  $f$  and  $g$  points in  $DC$ . The curve described through  $a's'f's'a$



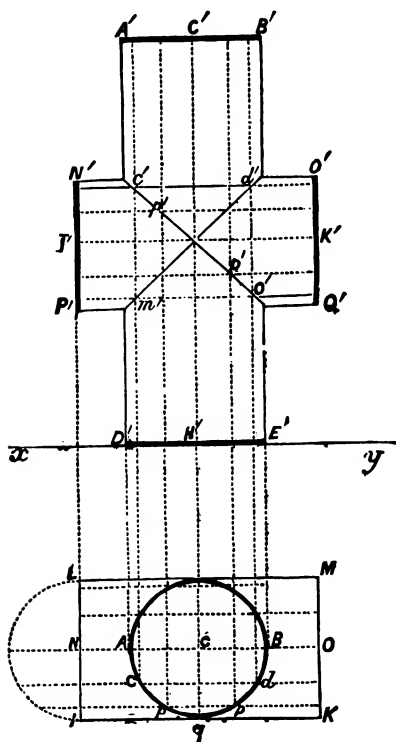
and  $b't'g't'b'$  is that in which the horizontal cylinder  $ABCD$  intersects the vertical cylinder  $E$ .

### Problem 63.

*To draw the curve of penetration of two right cylinders, whose diameters are equal, and whose axes are at right angles to each other.*

From the following remarks it will be seen in what respects the present problem differs from the foregoing. The diameters of the cylinders being equal (Pr. 63), the curves of penetration are projected vertically in straight lines perpendicular to each other. For, if we proceed to apply the method before given, we shall soon discover that the various points in these curves are situated in two planes at right angles to each other, and to the vertical plane, the sections formed by them being, in fact, ellipses equal and similar to

each other. It is not necessary to enter into any details in illustration of this case, other than to call attention to the figure, where the



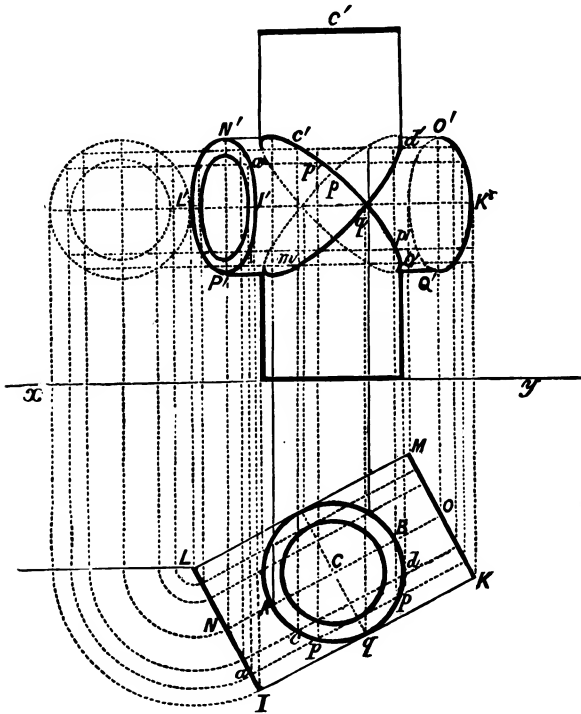
projections of some of the points are indicated, both in elevation and plan, by the same letters of reference.

### Problem 64.

To draw the curve of penetration of two right cylinders, whose diameters are equal, and whose axes are at right angles to each other, one of the cylinders being inclined to the vertical plane.

The two preceding figures being drawn (Prs. 62 and 63), we may easily find the projection  $c$ , of any point such as  $c'$ , by observing that it must be situated in the perpendicular  $c'c$ ; and that, since the

distance of this point (projected at  $c'$  in **Pr. 63**) from the horizontal plane remains unaltered, it must also be in the horizontal line  $c'd'$ . Upon these principles all the points indicated by *literal* references in the present problem are determined; the curves of penetration resulting therefrom intersecting each other at two points projected



upon the axial line  $L'K'$ , of which that marked  $q'$  alone is seen. The ends of the horizontal cylinder are represented by ellipses, the construction of which will also be clear on referring to the figure, and they do not require any further consideration.



## MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL PLANE GEOMETRY.

---

### (A.)

1. Draw a straight line 8 inches long, and divide it into 16 equal parts by continual bisection.

2. Make any line  $AB$ , 2 inches long, divide it into four equal parts, and at each end and point of division erect a perpendicular  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch in height.

3. Draw any vertical line  $AB$ , 4 inches in length. From the upper extremity, draw a line  $AC$ , 3 inches in length, and at right angles to it. Then bisect each of these lines.

4. Construct any triangle, then draw a line perpendicular to the base, and passing through the apex.

5. Construct a scale to represent 20 miles, taking  $\frac{1}{3}$ th of an inch to the mile.

6. Draw a horizontal line  $AB$ , 3 inches long. From  $B$ , drop a line  $BC$  at right angles to  $AB$ , 2 inches in length. Then trisect the right angle, and lastly, bisect each of the trisections.

7. Construct an equilateral triangle, and on its three sides respectively construct a square, a hexagon, and a rhombus having an angle of  $45^\circ$ .

8. Draw a line to represent  $60^\circ$ , as marked on the side of a map, on a scale of  $10^\circ$  to half an inch.

9. Draw any two parallel lines  $AB$  and  $CD$  at any distance apart. Find a point  $E$ , which shall be equidistant from these lines.

10. Draw a circle of  $1\frac{3}{4}$  inches radius. Divide it into 6 equal parts, and at each of the points of division, draw a line tangent to the circle.

11. Through any given point  $A$  within a circle, whose radius is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, draw the longest possible chord.

12. There is a stick leaning against a vertical wall, and making an angle of  $60^\circ$  with the ground. Required the angle which the stick makes with the wall.

## (B.)

13. Draw a square of  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches side, and inscribe in it four equal circles, each touching two others, and two sides of the square.

14. Divide the area of any given circle into six equal sectors, by lines drawn from the centre.

15. Draw a vertical line  $AB$ , 3 inches in length. On  $AB$ , construct a triangle, having an angle of  $50^\circ$  at  $A$ , and an angle of  $40^\circ$  at  $B$ . Then state how many degrees the remaining angle contains.

16. Produce a line  $AB$ , 3 inches in length, to a point  $C$ , so that  $BC : AB :: 3 : 5$ .

17. Divide a circle into three proportional areas by means of concentric circles, so that the area of the outside circle is three times that of the inside one, and the middle area twice that of the inside one.

18. Construct a triangle having sides respectively of 4 inches, 3 inches, and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches. On the 4 inches side, mark off any four *irregular* divisions, then divide the  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches side proportionately to the divisions on the 4 inches side.

19. Line  $AB$  is 3 inches in length,  $CD$  is 2 inches, and  $DE$  is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch. Find a line,  $FG$ , so that  $CD : AB :: FG : DE$ .

20. Draw a tangent touching an arc in any given point  $A$ , without using the centre.

21. Construct a right-angled triangle, making the hypotenuse twice the length of the base.

22.  $AB$  is the mean proportional between two lines 3 inches and 1.5 inch. Find its length.

23. In a given circle whose diameter is 2 inches, inscribe a regular pentagon in two different ways.

24. Draw a vertical line  $AB$ , 4 inches in length. Let this line be the altitude of an equilateral triangle. Construct it.

## (C.)

25. Draw an equilateral triangle, whose perimeter shall be equal to a square of 1.5 inch.

26. Show the position of a wheat sheaf situated exactly in the middle of a corn-field, which is bounded by six equal hedges.

27. Draw a sector of 3 inches radius, and having an angle of  $150^\circ$ .

28. Construct a right-angled triangle, whose base is 2 inches, the acute angles being in the ratio of 2 : 1.

29. Prove by illustrations that the angles made by straight lines drawn from the centre of any polygon to the angular points, are together equal to four right angles.

30. Draw a horizontal line  $AB$ , 2 inches in length. On  $AB$ , as base, construct a triangle, having sides of 2 inches and 3 inches, and find the altitude of the triangle.

31. Determine an equilateral triangle, equal in area to the sum of two squares, having their sides 1 inch and 2 inches respectively.

32. Construct a regular polygon whose side  $AB$  is the chord of an arc of  $45^\circ$ .

33. Draw the plan of a rectangular field, 400 yards by 250 yards. Mark a point  $O$ , which shall be exactly the centre of the field. [*Scale—1 inch to 100 yards.*]

34. Draw an equilateral triangle of 2 inches side, and a square equal to it in area.

35. Construct a regular polygon on any given line  $AB$ , having the distance from either of its extremities to the centre equal to the side  $AB$ .

36. Draw a horizontal line  $AB$ ,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches in length. Let this line be the altitude of an isosceles triangle. The altitude makes an angle of  $15^\circ$  with one of the sides of the triangle. Construct the triangle.

---

(D.)

37. Construct a square, an equilateral triangle, and a hexagon. Determine by a square the area of the three figures added together.

38. Inscribe in any given circle a triangle that shall cut off equal segments.

39. Draw a rhomboid, letting the shorter side be half the length of the longer side, and one of the angles to contain  $60^\circ$ . Find the centre of the rhomboid, and from it draw a line perpendicular to one of the longer sides.

40. Draw three circles of 1,  $1\frac{1}{2}$ , and 2 inches radii, so that each circle touches the other two.

41. In a given circle  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches in diameter, inscribe seven equal circles, six of which shall touch the given circle and a central one.

42. Draw a circle of 1 inch radius. Outside of this circle, find the positions of two points,  $A$  and  $B$ , which are to be respectively  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch and  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch from the circle.  $A$  and  $B$  are also to be 3 inches from each other. Draw a couple of tangents to the circle, from each of these points.

43. Draw two lines at an angle of  $40^\circ$ . Then draw two circles, each touching the lines and one another, the radius of the smaller one to be 2 inches.

44. In any given square sufficiently large, inscribe a triangle having its two sides equal and its base one inch long.

45. Describe an arc of a circle, and show how its centre may be ascertained if it were not already marked.

46. In any given square inscribe a regular polygon that shall cut off four equal corners of the square.

47. Describe a circle of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch radius. Mark any point  $A$ , on the circumference. Inscribe another circle of 1 inch radius within the first circle, and which shall just touch the large circle at point  $A$ , tangentially. Then describe another circle of  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch diameter, which shall be outside of the large circle, and also just touch point  $A$ , tangentially.

48. Draw a tangent touching the curve of an ellipse at any given point  $A$ , and also a line perpendicular to the curve, from that point.

## (E.)

49. Draw the plan of a triangular piece of wood, having sides respectively 3 feet,  $2\frac{1}{4}$  feet, and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  foot. It is required to cut the largest possible circle out of this piece of wood. Show how large the circle would be. [*Scale—1 inch to the foot.*]

50. Draw a rectangle having sides of 3 inches and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches, and in it inscribe an ellipse,

51. Draw a line  $AB$ , an inch long. From  $B$ , draw line  $BC$ , 2 inches long, and making an angle of  $30^\circ$  with  $AB$ . These lines are adjacent chords of a circle; describe the circle.

52. Within an octagon whose base is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, inscribe a similar concentric octagon whose base is  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch.

53. There is a thin piece of metal in the shape of an isosceles triangle. Its base is 3 inches long, and the angle at the apex is a right angle. Show how to cut this into four smaller equal triangles, all similar in shape to the large triangle.

54. About a given heptagon whose base is 1.5 inch, describe a similar heptagon whose base is 2 inches.

55. Draw a vertical line  $AB$ , 2 inches long. Let this be a diameter of a square. Construct the square, and then divide it into nine smaller squares, equal to each other.

56. About a given circle describe a triangle having angles of  $20^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ , and  $75^\circ$  respectively.

57. On a given line  $AB$ , 2 inches long, construct a regular hexagon, by the use of the set-square of  $60^\circ$ .

58. Draw three lines  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, 2 inches, and  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches respectively, and find their fourth proportional.

59. Draw a rectangle of 4 inches and  $2\frac{1}{4}$  inches sides. Within it inscribe an ellipse, which shall touch the centre of each side tangentially.

60. Find the length of  $AB$ , the mean proportional between two lines,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch and 3 inches long.

## (F.)

61. Draw a square, and by means of parallels to its sides—at a distance of  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch—construct another square.

62. Draw a scale to represent 15 feet, on a scale of  $\frac{1}{8}$ th of an inch to an inch.

63. Let a line  $AB$  (6 inches) represent the plan of one side of a street. Show the plan of the opposite side, which is to be parallel to  $AB$ . The street is to be 15 feet wide. [*Scale—1 inch to 10 feet.*]

64. Draw a line 4.5 inches in length, and at one extremity erect a perpendicular 1.5 inch long. From the top of the perpendicular draw a line making an angle of  $30^\circ$  with the given line.

65. Draw the plan of a circular race-course 1 mile in diameter, so that three gates,  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$ , shall fall within the path. [*Scale—1 inch to a mile.*]

66. Draw a horizontal line  $AB$ , 2 inches in length. Let this be the base of a triangle having one side  $\frac{4}{5}$  the length of  $AB$ , and the other side  $\frac{3}{5}$  of  $AB$ . Construct the triangle.

67. Draw a square of 2.5 inches side, and inscribe another within it, having each of its corners in the sides of the first, and at 1 inch from its angular points. Describe the circles circumscribing these two squares.

68. From a given point  $A$ ,  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch outside the circumference of a given circle whose diameter is 2 inches, draw a tangent to the circle.

69. An isosceles triangle has one of the angles at its base equal to  $36^{\circ} 14' 23''$ , what will be the vertical angle?

70. A line  $AB$  is 3.5 inches long. Divide it in the point  $C$ , so that  $AB : BC :: 7 : 4$ .

71. Describe a circle which shall pass through three consecutive angles of any regular nonagon.

72. The diagonal of a rectangular drawing-board is  $2\frac{1}{2}$  feet. One of the sides of the board makes an angle of  $30^{\circ}$  with one end of the diagonal. Draw the plan of the board. [Scale—1 inch to the foot.]

## (G.)

73. Divide a line 6 inches in length in extreme and mean proportion, and prove by construction that the greater segment is a mean proportional between the whole line and the less segment.

74. Inscribe in any given circle, that polygon whose angles at the centre are each  $60^{\circ}$ .

75. Draw any irregular polygonal figure, say an irregular pentagon. Let this represent the plan of a field, and draw another plan similar and equal to it.

76. Construct a triangle, two of its sides being 3 inches and 2 inches respectively, and the included angle  $50^{\circ}$ .

77. About any given circle, describe a regular pentagon, whose sides are parallel to an inscribed pentagon.

78. Construct a rectangle, making one of the sides  $\frac{3}{4}$  of the length of the adjacent side.

79. Place two equal lines, 1 inch long, at any angle of  $135^{\circ}$ . Consider them as two sides of a polygon, and complete the figure.

80. In any scalene triangle whose base is 2 inches, inscribe a rectangle having its base 1.5 inch.

81. Describe a circle of 2 inches diameter. Inscribe within it an irregular polygon, having angles at the centre, equal respectively to  $45^{\circ}$ ,  $60^{\circ}$ ,  $30^{\circ}$ ,  $105^{\circ}$ , and  $120^{\circ}$ .

82. Construct a triangle  $ABC$ , having its angles  $50^{\circ}$ ,  $60^{\circ}$ , and  $70^{\circ}$ , and circumscribing a circle of 1 inch radius.

83. Describe a *tre-foil* and *quatre-foil* having adjacent diameters of  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an inch.

84. State how many degrees are contained in the angles of each of the following regular polygons—a hexagon, an octagon, and a do-decagon.

## (H.)

85. Draw a pentagon, having its side  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch in length. Divide it into five isosceles triangles, by drawing lines from its centre to the angular points, and inscribe a circle in each.
86. Construct a *quatre-foil* and *cinque-foil*, having tangential arcs, the radius of which is  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch.
87. On a given line  $AB$ , 1 inch in length, construct a regular octagon, with a set-square of  $45^\circ$ .
88. Bisect a triangle, having its sides 4.5, 5, and 5.5 inches, by a line drawn perpendicular to the longest side.
89. Construct an ellipse in two different ways, the transverse diameter  $AB$ , and conjugate diameter  $CD$ , being given.
90. Draw a sector of 3 inches radius, and containing an angle of  $120^\circ$ . Divide it into six smaller sectors, all equal to one another.
91. Make any irregular figure of six sides, and construct an equilateral triangle equal in area.
92. The base of a scalene triangle is  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch. Its angles are respectively  $40^\circ$ ,  $60^\circ$ , and  $80^\circ$ . Describe a similar triangle, whose base is  $1\frac{1}{4}$  inch.
93. Draw an oblique line  $AB$ , 4 inches in length, and let it represent the major axis of an ellipse. Then draw the minor axis a length of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch. Describe the curve of the ellipse, by means of intersecting arcs, and draw a tangent through any point  $C$  in the curve.
94. Describe two circles equal to the sum and difference respectively of two other circles of 1.5 inch and 3 inches diameter.
95. From a circle, whose radius is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, cut off a segment which shall contain an angle of  $50^\circ$ .
96. Find the mean proportional to two lines  $AB$  and  $CD$ , being 3 inches and 2 inches respectively in length.
- 

## (I.)

97. Construct a pentagon having a diagonal 4 inches in length, and a square equal to it in area.
98. The perimeter of a triangle is 6 inches. Construct it so that its sides are in the proportion of 2, 3, and 4.
99. About a circle of 3 inches in diameter, construct a triangle having an angle of  $30^\circ$  and another angle of  $45^\circ$ .

100. The centres of two circles are 2.5 inches apart, having their radii respectively  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch and  $\frac{1}{2}$  inch. Draw the four lines touching both circles.

101. Draw an equilateral triangle having a base of  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches, and construct a rectangle equal to it in area.

102. Within a square of 3 inches side, inscribe the largest possible equilateral triangle.

103. A line 17.5 yards long is represented on a certain drawing by 3.5". Construct the scale to show yards.

104. Construct a rhombus having a base of 4 inches, and two angles of  $45^\circ$ , and make a triangle of equal area having one angle of  $70^\circ$ .

105. From any point  $C$  in the circumference of a circle of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch radius, draw a chord which will cut off a segment containing an angle of  $30^\circ$ .

106. Determine  $\frac{1}{8}$  of an inch by diagonal division.

107. Draw a rhomboid on a base of 1.5 inch, and construct an isosceles triangle of equal area.

108. On a given line  $AB$ ,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches long, construct an equilateral triangle. On the same line construct a scalene triangle, of the same area as the equilateral triangle, and having one of its angles equal to  $20^\circ$ .

---

(K.)

109. Construct an equilateral triangle equal in area to a square, the base of which is  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

110. Construct a square of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch side. Then on one of the sides construct an isosceles triangle equal to the square in area.

111. Construct a triangle equal in area to two similar triangles, the bases of which are respectively 1 inch and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

112. Draw any irregular seven-sided rectilinear figure. On a given line  $AB$ ,  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches long, construct a rectangle equal in area to the irregular figure.

113. Construct a triangle equal in area to the difference between two similar triangles, the bases of which are respectively  $2\frac{1}{2}$  inches and  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

114. Draw a regular pentagon of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch sides. Then construct the following figures, each having  $\frac{2}{3}$  the area of the pentagon;—viz. a square, a right-angled triangle, and a rhomboid, the latter containing acute angles of  $45^\circ$ .



115. Describe a circle having a radius of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch, and construct a rhomboid equal to it in area, and having an angle of  $45^\circ$  at the base.

116. Within an equilateral triangle of 2 inches sides, insert a trefoil of tangential arcs of circles.

117. Draw a circle having a radius of  $\frac{3}{4}$  inch, and a line  $AB$  at any distance from it. Draw a circle which shall touch both the given line and circle.

118. Draw a trapezium having adjacent pairs of sides equal, and respectively  $2\frac{1}{2}$  and  $3\frac{1}{2}$  inches in length. Within the trapezium, inscribe a circle and a square.

119. Two lines,  $AB$  and  $CD$ , converge towards each other. Show how the angle at which they meet may be bisected when it is inaccessible.

120. Draw a sector containing an angle of  $120^\circ$ , and having radii of  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch. Inscribe a circle within this sector, which shall touch the arc and the radii, tangentially.

END OF PLANE GEOMETRY EXERCISES.

## MISCELLANEOUS EXERCISES IN PRACTICAL SOLID GEOMETRY.

---

### (A.)

1. Project a line 3 inches long when parallel to the horizontal plane, and at right angles to the vertical plane, its height above the ground being 2 inches, and distance from the vertical plane 2 inches.

2.  $A$  and  $B$ , 3 inches apart, are the *plans* of two points, of which  $A'$  is 2 inches, and  $B'$  3.5 inches, above the paper. What is the length and inclination of to the paper, of the line  $A'B'$ ?

3. Draw the plan and elevation of a black-board 4 feet square, suspended 3 feet above the floor of a schoolroom to which it is parallel and against the wall. [Scale, 2 feet to an inch.]

4. Draw the *plan* of a line 4 inches long when inclined at  $45^\circ$ , and an elevation of it on any vertical plane not parallel to the line.

5. Project a piece of straight wire 3 feet long, which is fixed in the wall at right angles to it, and 6 feet above the ground to which it is parallel. [Scale, 2 feet to an inch.]

6. The plan of a line is 1.5" long, and its elevation is 3". The *projectors* of its extremities are 1" apart, measured along  $xy$ . What is its true length and inclination?

7. Project a square prism, one end of which rests on the horizontal plane, and one of its upright faces is parallel to the vertical plane. The height of the long edges is 8', and of the end edges 4'. [Scale,  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to the foot.]

8. Draw the plan and elevation of a point  $A$ , which is situated above the horizontal plane, 3" behind the vertical plane, and 3" distant from  $xy$ .

9. Project a triangular prism resting on one of its ends, and having one of its faces parallel to the vertical plane; its height being 10', and the breadth of each of its triangular edges 4'. [Scale,  $\frac{1}{8}$  inch to the foot.]

10. A line  $AB$ , 4" long, is inclined  $50^\circ$  to the horizontal plane. Draw its projections when its plan makes an angle of  $35^\circ$  with  $xy$ .

11. Project a hexagonal prism resting on the floor of a room having one of its faces inclined at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the vertical plane, the height of the prism being 8' and the width of each face 4'. [Scale, 6 feet to an inch.]

12. Draw both plan and elevation of a cube of 3" edge, when its base is horizontal, and .5" above the paper; its horizontal edges making angles of  $35^\circ$  with the vertical plane.

## (B.)

13. A globe, 10' in diameter, stands on a square table, the edge of which touches the wall of a room. Draw its plan and elevation on a scale of 1' to 1".

14. Draw plan and elevation of a square prism of any size, when its long edges are horizontal, and one of its faces makes an angle of  $35^\circ$  with the paper.

15. Project a cylinder resting on the horizontal plane on one of its ends; its height is 6', and the diameter of its base 3'. [Scale,  $\frac{1}{4}$ ' to the foot.]

16. Draw both plan and elevation of a tetrahedron of 2" edge, when its axis is vertical.

17. Project a cone resting on the horizontal plane, its vertical height being 6' and the diameter of its base 3'. [Scale,  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to the foot.]

18. A cone, base 1.5" radius, 3" high, is cut by a plane at  $70^\circ$  with the axis; the centre of the section being 2" above the base. Show the plan of the cut.

19. Project a tetrahedron of any size, having one of its faces resting on the horizontal plane, and one side inclined at an angle of  $40^\circ$ .

20. Draw plan and elevation of a square pyramid, base 1" side, height 4" when one of its long edges is inclined  $20^\circ$  to the paper.

21. Project a pentagonal prism which stands on the floor on one of its ends, having a hidden face parallel to the horizontal plane. Height 5 inches, and width of face  $1\frac{1}{2}$  inch.

22. A hexagonal prism, base 1" edge, and 3" long, has its axis horizontal, one of its faces being inclined  $15^\circ$  to the paper. Draw both plan and elevation, and a second elevation upon a vertical plane, making an angle of  $45^\circ$  with the plan of the axis.

23. Draw the elevation and plan of a cone, the height of the elevation being 3 inches, and the width of the base 1.5 inch.

24. A pyramid having for its base a square 3" side, and its axis 3.5" long, rests with one face on the horizontal plane. Draw its plan, and a sectional elevation on a vertical plane represented by a line bisecting the plan of the axis, and making an angle of  $60^\circ$  with it.

## (C.)

25.  $AB$  is the elevation of a line 4 feet long, which is parallel to the horizontal plane, but inclined to the vertical plane. Project its plan and determine the angle at which it is inclined. [*Scale,  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to the foot.*]

26. The horizontal and vertical traces of a certain oblique plane make angles of  $40^\circ$  and  $80^\circ$  respectively with  $xy$ . Assume any point above the base line as the elevation of a point contained by this plane, and determine its plan.

27.  $AB$  is the plan of a line 4 feet long, which is parallel to the vertical plane, but inclined to the horizontal plane. Project its elevation, and determine the size of the angle of inclination. [*Scale  $\frac{1}{4}$ " to the foot.*]

28. Draw a line parallel to  $xy$ , at a distance of 1.5" from it. Consider this as the horizontal trace of a certain plane inclined  $40^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, and determine the vertical trace.

29. Project an equilateral triangle, its surface being inclined at an angle of  $45^\circ$  to the vertical plane, with its base parallel to the horizontal plane.

30. Draw two parallel planes, inclined  $50^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, and 1" apart; their horizontal traces to make angles of  $40^\circ$  with  $xy$ .

31. Project a regular hexagon at an angle of  $40^\circ$  to the vertical plane, its axis being parallel to the horizontal plane.

32. Draw the traces of a plane inclined  $75^\circ$  to the horizontal plane, and  $35^\circ$  to the vertical plane:

33. Project a hexagonal prism, resting on one of its solid angles; its axis being inclined to the horizontal plane at an angle of  $60^\circ$ , but parallel to the vertical plane. Its height is 8', and the width of each of its faces 4'. [*Scale  $\frac{1}{8}$ " to the foot.*]

34. A square has its surface inclined  $45^\circ$ , neither of its sides being horizontal. Draw plan and elevation.

35. A square prism, base 2" by 4" long, has one of its rectangular faces inclined  $40^\circ$ , the diagonal of that face being horizontal. Draw plan and elevation.

36. The axis of a square pyramid, base 1.5" side, 4" long, is inclined  $60^\circ$ , one edge of the base being horizontal. Show the true shape of a horizontal section bisecting the axis.

## QUESTIONS IN PLANE GEOMETRY.

---

### Section 1.

(1.) Define a point. (2.) What is the true mathematical point? (3.) Define a line. (4.) What are the ends of lines called? (5.) What is the point of intersection? (6.) Name the different kinds of lines. (7.) What is a straight line? (8.) When is it said to be produced? (9.) What is a curved line? (10.) Name the directions that a curved line may have. (11.) What is a horizontal line? (12.) What is a vertical line? (13.) What is an oblique line? (14.) How many oblique lines may there be? (15.) What are parallel lines? (16.) Name the different kinds. (17.) What is an angle? (18.) On what does its magnitude depend? (19.) Name the different kinds. (20.) When is a straight line perpendicular to another? (21.) Is a perpendicular line *always* vertical? (22.) What is a right angle? (23.) Why is it made the standard for comparing other angles? (24.) What is an obtuse angle? (25.) What is an acute angle? (26.) What is a circle? (27.) Distinguish between circle and circumference. (28.) What is an arc? (29.) Define radius. (30.) What is a diameter? (31.) What is a semicircle? (32.) What is a tangent? (33.) Into how many parts is the circumference of every circle divided? (34.) What are the parts called? (35.) How many degrees in a quadrant? (36.) What relationship is there between the angles at the centre of a circle and the arcs on which they stand? (37.) What is a minute? (38.) What is a second?

### Section 2.

(1.) What is Euclid's definition of a figure? (2.) What is Euclid's definition of rectilinear figures? (3.) What is a triangle? (4.) How is it the most simple of all rectilinear figures? (5.) Why is it sometimes called a trilateral? (6.) If a rectilinear figure has six sides, how many angles has it? (7.) How many kinds of triangles are there? (8.) From what are they named? (9.) What is an equilateral triangle? (10.) What is an isosceles triangle? (11.) What is

a scalene triangle? (12.) What is a right-angled triangle? (13.) Which side is the hypotenuse? (14.) What are the other sides called? (15.) What is an obtuse-angled triangle? (16.) What is an acute-angled triangle? (17.) What is the vertex of a triangle? (18.) What other name has it? (19.) What is generally meant by the base? (20.) In what kind of triangles may it be changed? (21.) What is the altitude of a triangle? (22.) What is the perimeter of a figure? (23.) What is a chord?

### Section 3.

(1.) What is a quadrilateral figure? (2.) What is a parallelogram? (3.) How many kinds of quadrilaterals are there? (4.) Name the four which are parallelograms. (5.) Name the two which are not parallelograms. (6.) What is a square? (7.) What is a rectangle? (8.) What other name has it? (9.) What is a rhombus? (10.) What angles are always equal to each other? (11.) What is a rhomboid? (12.) What is a trapezium? (13.) What is a trapezoid? (14.) Give another name for a quadrilateral figure. (15.) What is a diagonal? (16.) What is a diameter of a *parallelogram*?

### Section 4.

(1.) What is the area of a figure? (2.) How are such measurements calculated? (3.) What is the area of a square whose side contains 6 linear inches? (4.) What is the area of a rectangle whose adjacent sides are 6 feet and 5 feet? (5.) What are concentric circles?

### Section 5.

(1.) What is Euclid's definition of multilateral figures or polygons? (2.) What is a regular polygon? (3.) What is an irregular polygon? (4.) How many sides may a polygon have? (5.) What is the limit to the number of sides that we usually meet with? (6.) What is a nonagon? (7.) What name is given to a figure of eleven sides? (8.) Of twelve sides?

### Section 6.

(1.) What is a cone? (2.) What is meant by its axis? (3.) When is a cone said to be right? (4.) When is it said to be oblique? (5.) Under what circumstances will a section of a cone be a circle? (6.) What is an ellipse? (7.) How many diameters has it? (8.) What is the long diameter called? (9.) What name is given to the short diameter? (10.) What are the foci? (11.) What is a parabola? (12.) What is its double ordinate? (13.) What is its ordinate? (14.) What is its abscissa? (15.) What is a hyperbola? (16.) What is its diameter? (17.) What do we mean by the "conic sections?" (18.) What is an oval? (19.) Why is it so called?

**Section 7.**

- (1.) How many kinds of inscribed figures are there? (2.) When is a rectilinear figure said to be inscribed in another rectilinear figure? (3.) When is a rectilinear figure said to be inscribed in a circle? (4.) When is a circle said to be inscribed in a rectilinear figure? (5.) What is a sector of a circle?

**Section 8.**

- (1.) How many kinds of described figures are there? (2.) When is a rectilinear figure said to be described about another rectilinear figure? (3.) When is a rectilinear figure said to be described about a circle? (4.) When is a circle said to be described about a rectilinear figure?

**Section 9.**

- (1.) What is ratio? (2.) On what does the ratio of any two quantities depend? (3.) What is understood by a "part?" (4.) What is Euclid's definition of proportion? (5.) When are four quantities said to be proportionals? (6.) What is the last term called? (7.) Which are the extremes? (8.) Which are the means? (9.) What product equals the product of the means? (10.) What is meant by a mean proportional? (11.) What is a proportional in Practical Geometry? (12.) What is meant by the fourth proportional greater? (13.) What is meant by the fourth proportional less? (14.) What is meant by the third proportional greater? (15.) The third proportional less?

**Section 10.**

- (1.) What is Euclid's definition of similar rectilinear figures? (2.) What rectilinear figures are similar? (3.) What other rectilinear figures can be made similar?

**Section 11.**

- (1.) In Euclid I. 35, what is meant by the same parallels? (2.) In what direction is the altitude reckoned? (3.) Under what circumstances is a triangle half of a parallelogram?



## QUESTIONS IN SOLID GEOMETRY.

---

- (1.) To what has the preceding portion of the work been confined ? (2.) What kind of objects next comes under consideration ? (3.) What is the great difference between a plane figure and a solid object ? (4.) Name the distinct ways in which a solid may be represented. (5.) Explain clearly the difference between drawing an object perspectively and geometrically. (6.) How many distinct drawings must we make in order to draw a solid object geometrically ? (7.) Explain clearly what is meant by plan, and what by elevation. (8.) What do we understand by the "planes of projection ?" (9.) Name them. (10.) How may the horizontal plane be illustrated ? (11.) How may the vertical plane be illustrated ? (12.) What do we understand by the "line of intersection ?" (13.) By what other names is it known ? (14.) What do we mean by the projections of an object ? (15.) By what is every solid bounded ? (16.) By what is every surface bounded ? (17.) By what is every line limited ? (18.) What do we mean by the projector of a point ? (19.) How may a point be found, its projections being given ? (20.) When a line is parallel to the horizontal and vertical plane, to what are its projections parallel ? (21.) Under what circumstances must we suppose the vertical plane to revolve upon the line of intersection of the planes of projection ? (22.) What shows the distance of a point from the horizontal plane ? (23.) What shows the distance of a point from the vertical plane ? (24.) What is understood by the term rabatting ?
- (25.) What solids are most commonly used to illustrate the principles of Solid Geometry ? (26.) What is a cube ? (27.) What is a prism ? (28.) What is a pyramid ? (29.) What is a sphere ? (30.) What is a cone ? (31.) What is a cylinder ?
- (32.) What are co-ordinate planes ? (33.) What do we understand by the traces of a line ? (34.) How are they distinguished ? (35.) What do we understand by the traces of a plane ? (36.) How are they distinguished ? (37.) When the projections of a line are given, what may be found ? (38.) If a plane be parallel to the

---

ground line, to what are its traces parallel? (39.) If a trace be perpendicular to the ground line, to what are its traces perpendicular?

(40.) Name four other regular solids which are used to illustrate the principles of Solid Geometry. (41.) What is a tetrahedron?

(42.) What is an octahedron? (43.) What is a dodecahedron? (44.) What is an icosahedron?

(45.) What do we understand by a section? (46.) What do we mean by penetrations of solids?

## ETYMOLOGY OF GEOMETRICAL TERMS.

---

*Abbreviations*—L. for Latin ; G. for Greek ; F. for French.

---

- Abscissa**, from L. *abscissus*, *a, um*, torn off ; from L. *ab-scindo*, to tear off.
- Acute**, from L. *acutus*, *a, um*, sharp or pointed ; from L. *acuō*, to make sharp.
- Adjacent**, from L. *adjacens-entis*, lying near ; from L. *ad*, to ; and *jaceo*, to lie.
- Alternate**, from L. *alternatus*, *a, um* ; from L. *alterno*, to do anything by turns. [L. *alter* = other.]
- Altitude**, from L. *altitudo*, *dinis*, height ; from L. *altus*, *a, um*, high.
- Angle**, from L. *angulus*, a corner ; from G. *angkylos*, a bend.
- Apex**, from L. *apex*, the *tip* or *top* of a thing.
- Arc**, from L. *arcus*, a bow.
- Area**, from L. *area*, a vacant piece of ground ; originally a place where corn was *dried* ; from L. *areo*, to be dry.
- Axis**, from L. *axis* ; G. *axon*, an axle.
- Base**, from L. *basis*, a foundation ; from G. *baino*, to step.
- Bisect**, from L. *bis*, twice ; and L. *seco* (*sectus*), to cut.
- Centre**, from L. *centrum* ; G. *kentron*, a sharp point. [G. *kenteo* = to prick.]
- Chord**, from L. *chorda* ; G. *chordē*, an intestine, also a string of a lyre.
- Cinquefoil**, from F. *cing*, five ; and F. *feuille*, a leaf. [L. *folium* = a leaf.]
- Circle**, from L. *circulus*, a ring ; from G. *kirkos*, a circle.
- Circumference**, from L. *circumfero*, to carry round ; from L. *circum*, around ; and L. *fero*, to carry.
- Coincide**, from L. *co* (*con*), together ; and L. *incido*, to fall into or upon. [L. *in* = in ; and L. *cado* = to fall.]
- Concentric**, from L. *con*, together ; and L. *centrum* ; G. *kentron*, a sharp point.
- Cone**, from L. *conus*, G. *kōnos*, that which comes to a point.

**Conjugate**, from L. *conjungo*, to yoke or join together ; from L. *con*, together ; and L. *jugum*, that which joins, a yoke.

**Converge**, from F. *converger*, L. *con* = with ; L. *vergo*, to bend, or incline.

**Co-ordinate**, from L. *co* (*con*), together ; and L. *ordo*, *inis*, a straight row, a regular series.

**Cube**, from L. *cubeus* ; G. *kubos*, a die.

**Curve**, from L. *curvus*, *a*, *um*, crooked, bent.

**Cylinder**, from G. *kylindros* ; from G. *kylindō*, to roll. Hence *roller*-like.

**Decagon**, from G. *deka*, ten ; and G. *gōnia*, an angle (corner).

**Decimal**, from L. *decem*, ten.

**Diagonal**, from G. *diagōnios*, from corner to corner. [G. *dia*, through ; and G. *gōnia*, a corner.]

**Diagram**, from G. *diagramma*, that which is marked out by lines ; from G. *dia*, round ; and G. *graphō*, to write or delineate.

**Diameter**, from G. *diametros*, measurement through ; from G. *dia*, through ; and G. *metron*, a measure.

**Dihedral**, from G. *di*, double ; and G. *hedra*, a base.

**Dodecagon**, from G. *dōdeka*, twelve ; and G. *gōnia*, an angle (corner).

**Dodecahedron**, from G. *dōdeka*, twelve ; and G. *hedra*, a base.

**Duodecimal**, from L. *duodecim*, twelve. [L. *duo* = two, and L. *decem* = ten.]

**Elevation**, from L. *elevo*, to lift up or raise ; from L. *e*, up ; and L. *levo*, to raise.

**Ellipse**, from G. *elleipsis*, a defect or leaving out. [G. *elleipo*, to leave out.]

**Equilateral**, from L. *aequilaterus*, equal-sided ; from L. *aequus*, *a*, *um*, equal ; and L. *latus*, *lateris*, a side.

**Equivalent**, from L. *aequus*, *a*, *um*, equal ; and L. *valens*, *valentis*, being strong. [L. *valeo* = to be strong.]

**Figure**, from L. *figura*, a shape. [L. *fungo* = to form.]

**Focus**, from L. *focus*, a fire-place, hearth. [L. *foveo* = to heat.]

**Foil**, from F. *feuille*, a leaf. [L. *folium* = a leaf.]

**Geometry**, from G. *geōmetrō*, to measure land ; from G. *gē*, the earth ; and G. *metro*, to measure.

**Heptagon**, from G. *heptagōnos*, seven-cornered ; from G. *hepta*, seven ; and G. *gōnia*, an angle (corner).

**Hexagon**, from G. *hex*, six ; and G. *gōnia*, an angle.

**Horizontal**, from G. *horizō*, to divide or bound. [G. *horos* = a limit.]

**Hyperbola**, from G. *hyperbolē*, a throwing beyond ; from G. *hyper*, beyond or over ; and *ballo*, to throw.

**Hypotenuse**, from G. *hypoteinousa*, the line subtending a right angle; from G. *hypo*, under; and G. *teinō*, to stretch.

**Icosahedron**, from G. *eikosi*, twenty; and G. *hedra*, a base.

**Intersect**, from L. *inter*, between; and L. *seco* (*sectum*), to cut.

**Involute**, from L. *involvere*, to roll around, wrap up; from L. *in*, upon; and L. *volvo*, *volutum*, to roll.

**Isosceles**, from G. *isoskelēs*, having equal legs; from G. *isos*, equal; and G. *skelos*, a leg.

**Line**, from L. *linea*, a linen thread. [L. *linum* = flax.]

**Multilateral**, from L. *multilaterus*, many-sided; from L. *multus*, a, um, many; and L. *latus*, *lateris*, a side.

**Nonagon**, from L. *nonus*, a, um, the ninth; and G. *gōnia*, a corner.

**Oblique**, from L. *obliquus*, a, um, sidelong, slanting.

**Oblong**, from L. *oblongus*, a, um, rather long.

**Obtuse**, from L. *obtusus*, a, um, blunt; from L. *obtundo*, to blunt; from L. *ob*, against; and L. *tundo*, to beat.

**Octagon**, from G. *oktō*, eight; and G. *gōnia*, an angle.

**Octahedron**, from G. *oktō*, eight; and G. *hedra*, a base.

**Ordinate**, from L. *ordo*, *inis*, a straight row, a regular series.

**Oval**, from L. *ovum*, an egg. Hence *egg-shaped*.

**Parabola**, from G. *parabolē*, a placing beside; from G. *para*, from, by the side of; and G. *ballo*, to throw.

**Parallel**, from G. *para*, by the side of; and G. *allelōs*, one another. [G. *allos* = another.]

**Parallelogram**, from G. *parallēlogrammon*, a figure bounded with parallel sides. [G. *grammē* = a line.]

**Penetration**, from L. *penetro* (*penetratum*), to place or set into.

**Pentagon**, from G. *pente*, five; and G. *gōnia*, a corner.

**Perimeter**, from G. *peri*, around; and G. *metron*, a measure.

**Periphery**, from G. *peri*, around; and G. *pherō*, to carry.

**Perpendicular**, from L. *perpendicularum*, a plumb-line; from L. *per*, thoroughly; and L. *pendo*, to weigh.

**Plane**, from L. *planus*, perfectly flat.

**Point**, from L. *punctum*, a point, or small hole. [L. *pungo* = to pierce into]

**Polygon**, from G. *polugōnos*, a figure having many angles; from G. *polus*, many; and G. *gōnia*, a corner.

**Prism**, from G. *prisma*. [G. *prizō* = to saw.]

**Problem**, from G. *problēma*, that which is proposed; from G. *pro*, before; and G. *ballo*, to throw.

**Profile**, from L. *pro*, forth; and L. *flum*, a thread.

**Projection**, from L. *projicio* (*projectum*), to throw forth or before; from L. *pro*, forth; and L. *jaceo*, to throw.

**Proportional**, from L. *proportio*, symmetry, analogy; from L. *pro*, in comparison with; and L. *portio*, *portionis*, part, share.

**Pyramid**, from G. *pyramis*, *pyramidos*, usually derived from G. *pyr*, a flame, because of its pointed shape.

**Quadrant**, from L. *quadrans*, *-antis*, making square; from L. *quadro*, to make square. [L. *quatuor* = four.]

**Quadrilateral**, from L. *quadrilaterus*, four-sided; from L. *quatuor*, four; and L. *latus*, *lateris*, a side.

**Quatrefoil**, from F. *quatre*, four; and F. *feuille*, a leaf.

**Radius**, from L. *radius*, a spoke of a wheel.

**Ratio**, from L. *ratio*, calculation. [L. *reor* (*ratus*), to think, suppose.]

**Rectangle**, from L. *rectus*, *a*, *um*, right; and L. *angulus*, a corner.

**Rectilineal**, from L. *rectus*, *a*, *um*, right, straight; and L. *linea*, a linen thread. [L. *linum* = flax.]

**Rhombus**, from G. *rhombos*, a wheel thus shaped, and turned on a pivot. [G. *rhembō*, to turn round and round.]

**Rhomboid**, from G. *rhombos*, and G. *eidōs*, form, shape.

**Scale**, from L. *scala*, a ladder, flight of steps. [L. *scando*, to mount.]

**Scalene**, from G. *skalēnos*, unequal, uneven. [G. *skazō*, to limp.]

**Sector**, from L. *sector*, one who cuts. [L. *seco* (*sectum*), to cut.]

**Segment**, from L. *segmentum*, a piece cut off. [L. *seco* (*sectum*), to cut.]

**Semi-circle**, from L. *semi*, half; and L. *circulus*, a ring; from G. *kirkos*, a circle.

**Sphere**, from G. *sphaira*, a ball or globe.

**Spiral**, from G. *speira*, anything wound round, a coil.

**Square**, from L. *quadro*, to make square. [Old F. *esquarré*, a square; modern F. *carré*, square.]

**Superficies**, from L. *superficies*, the upper side, the top; from L. *super*, above; and L. *facies*, a face.

**Tangent**, from L. *tangens*, *-entis*, touching. [L. *tango* = to touch.]

**Tetrahedron**, from G. *tetra*, four; and G. *hedra*, a base.

**Trace**, from L. *traho*, to draw. [F. *trace* = trace.]

**Transverse**, from L. *transversus*, lying across; from L. *trans*, across; and L. *verto* (*versum*), to turn.

**Trapezium**, from G. *trapezion*, dim. of *trapeza*, a table; contracted either from G. *tri-peza*, three-legged; or from G. *tetra-peza*, four-legged.

**Trapezoid**, from G. *trapezion*, and G. *eidōs*, shape, form.

**Trefoil**, from F. *trois*, three; and F. *feuille*, a leaf.

**Triangle**, from L. *triangulus*, having three corners; from L. *tres*, three; and L. *angulus*, a corner.

**Trilateral**, from L. *trilateralis*, having three sides; from L. *tres*, three; and L. *latus, lateris*, a side.

**Trisect**, from L. *tres*, three; and L. *seco (sectum)*, to cut.

**Vertex**, from L. *vertex*, the top or crown of the head. [L. *verto* = to turn.]

**Vertical**, from L. *vertex (verticis)*, the top of the head.

**Volute**, from L. *volvo (volutum)*, to roll.

## INDEX TO PROBLEMS IN PLANE GEOMETRY.

---

	PAGE
<b>Altitude</b> ; to find, of given triangle, ... ..	25
<b>Angle</b> ; to bisect, ... ..	10
— of $45^\circ$ ; to construct, on given line, ... ..	11
— of $60^\circ$ , $30^\circ$ , or $15^\circ$ ; to construct, on given line, ... ..	11
—; to make, equal to given angle, from given point, <i>in</i> the given line, ... ..	13
—; to make, equal to given angle, from given point, <i>outside</i> the given line, ... ..	14
—; to bisect, made by two converging lines, the angular point being inaccessible, ... ..	14
—, <b>right</b> , to trisect, ... ..	10
<b>Arc</b> ; to bisect, ... ..	6
—, <b>tangential</b> ; to draw, to two given circles, touching one of the given circles in a given point, ... ..	54
— <b>of a circle</b> ; to describe, tangential to two given converging lines, ... ..	55
—; to describe, tangential to given arc and given line, ... ..	170
<b>Circle</b> ; to find centre of, ... ..	45
—; to describe, passing through three given points, ... ..	45
—; to describe, passing through given point, and tangential to given line, ... ..	46
—; to describe, touching two given circles, ... ..	48
—; to describe, of given radius, touching two given circles, ... ..	49
—; to inscribe, within given triangle, ... ..	98
—; to inscribe, within given square, ... ..	98
—; to inscribe, within given rhombus, ... ..	99
—; to inscribe, within given trapezium, ... ..	99
—; to inscribe, within given quadrant, ... ..	100
—; to describe, about given triangle, ... ..	120
—; to describe, about given square, ... ..	121
—; to construct, two-thirds of given circle, ... ..	164
—; to describe, of given radius, tangential to two converging lines, ... ..	169
—; to draw, touching given circle in given point, also a given line, ... ..	171



	PAGE
<b>Circle</b> ; to inscribe, in given angle, passing through given point, ...	172
— ; to construct, touching given line in given point, also given smaller circle, ...	173
— ; to construct, passing through two given points, and touching given line, ...	174
— ; to draw, tangential to two unequal circles, ...	175
— ; to divide, into any number of parts, equal in area and outline,	47
— , area of ; to divide, into any number of parts by concentric circles, ...	46
<b>Circles, three</b> ; to describe, having given radii, each being tangential to the other two, ...	49
— ; to inscribe, in given triangle, each touching two others, and two sides of triangle, ...	105
— ; to inscribe, in given triangle, each touching other two, and one side of triangle, ...	106
— ; to inscribe, within given equilateral triangle, touching each other, and two sides of triangle, ...	107
— ; to inscribe, within given circle, ...	107
— ; to inscribe, within given equilateral triangle, each touching other two, and one side of triangle, ...	168
<b>Circles, four</b> ; to inscribe, in given square, touching each other, and one side only of square, ...	108
— ; to inscribe, in given square, touching each other, and two sides of given square, ...	109
— ; to inscribe, in given octagon, ...	110
— ; to inscribe, in given circle, ...	111
<b>Circles, five</b> ; to inscribe, in given circle, ...	112
<b>Circles, six</b> ; to inscribe, within equilateral triangle, ...	113
— ; to describe, about and equal to given circle, ...	121
<b>Circles, seven</b> ; to inscribe, in given circle, ...	113
<b>Circles, any number of</b> ; to inscribe, in given circle, ...	103
— ; to describe, about a given circle, ...	122
<b>Circles, series of</b> ; to describe, tangential to two converging lines, ...	50
<b>Decagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ...	62
— ; to construct, on given line, ...	69
<b>Dodecagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ...	64
<b>Ellipse</b> ; to describe, transverse and conjugate diameters given, ...	75-79
— ; to find centre and axes of, ...	79
— ; to complete curve of, one quarter given, ...	82
— ; to complete curve of, more than half given, ...	83
— ; to describe, about rectangle, ...	83
<b>Elliptical figure</b> ; to describe, one diameter given, ...	80
— ; to construct, two squares given, ...	80
<b>Equilateral triangle</b> ; to construct, on given base, ...	23
— ; to construct, height given, ...	24
— ; to inscribe, within given circle, ...	88
— ; to inscribe, in given square, ...	89

	PAGE
<b>Equilateral triangle</b> ; to inscribe, in given hexagon, ... ..	89
—; to inscribe, in given pentagon, ... ..	90
—; to describe, about given square, ... ..	116
—; to describe, about given circle, ... ..	117
—; to construct, equal to given triangle not equilateral, ... ..	155
<b>Foiled figure</b> ; to construct, about any polygon, ... ..	123
<b>Four-sided equilateral figure</b> ; to inscribe, in a given parallelogram,	96
<b>Heptagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	60
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	67
<b>Hexagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	59
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	66
—; to construct, diameter given, ... ..	71
<b>Hyperbola</b> ; to construct, diameter, abscissa, and ordinate given, ...	86
<b>Involute of circle</b> , to construct, ... ..	179
<b>Ionic volute</b> , to construct, longest diameter given, ... ..	180
<b>Isosceles triangle</b> ; to construct, given base and vertical angle, ...	29
—; to construct, given base and altitude, ... ..	30
—; to construct, given base and vertical angle of $90^\circ$ , ... ..	30
—; to construct, given base and vertical angle containing a re- quired number of degrees, ... ..	31
—; to construct, given one of equal sides and one of equal angles,	31
—; to construct, given base and perimeter, ... ..	32
—; to inscribe, within given square, having given base, ... ..	90
—; to construct, equal in area to, and on one side of, given square, ... ..	154
—; to construct, equal in area to given triangle, ... ..	155
—; to construct, given altitude and length of its equal sides, ... ..	167
<b>Line</b> ; to draw, parallel to given line, at given distance from it, ...	12
—; to draw, parallel to given line, through given point, ... ..	13
—; to divide, into any number of equal parts, ... ..	16, 17
—; to divide, proportionally to given divided line, ... ..	17, 18
—; to draw, through given point, which, if produced, would pass through the angular point, towards which the given lines converge, ... ..	167
<b>Lines</b> ; to draw, from any two given points, outside a given line, to make equal angles with the given line, ... ..	15
—; to draw, from any two given points, outside a given line, so that they may be equal in length, ... ..	15
—; to draw, from any two given points, going to the same point to which lines converge, where the point of convergence is inaccessible, ... ..	18
—, parallel; to join the extremities of, by a pair of arcs, ... ..	173
<b>Nonagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	61
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	68
<b>Octagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	60
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	67
—; to inscribe, in given square, ... ..	97

	PAGE
<b>Octagon</b> ; to construct, within given circle, making one of its angles coincide with a given point, ... ..	169
<b>Oval</b> ; to describe, by arcs of circles, ... ..	84
<b>Parabola</b> ; to construct, its ordinate and abscissa being given, ...	85
<b>Parallelogram</b> ; to construct, on given base equal in area to given parallelogram, ... ..	140
—; to construct, equal to given triangle in area and perimeter, ...	144
—; to divide, into two parts, proportionate in area to given divided line, ... ..	145
<b>Pentagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	58
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	65
—; to describe, about a given pentagon, sides parallel, and equal to given line, ... ..	118
<b>Perpendicular</b> ; to draw, to a given straight line, from given point in the line, ... ..	6, 7
—; to draw, to a given straight line, from given point outside it, ...	8, 9
—; to draw, to curve of ellipse, from given point, ... ..	81
<b>Point</b> ; to find, which would be situated in the continuation of arc, centre of arc being not obtainable, ... ..	54
<b>Polygon, any</b> ; to inscribe, in given circle, ... ..	57, 58
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	64, 65
—; to complete, two sides being given, ... ..	71
—; to construct, about given circle, ... ..	120
—; to construct, equal in area to given triangle, ... ..	163
<b>Polygon, irregular</b> ; to make, equal to given irregular polygon, ...	146
<b>Proportional</b> ; to find a mean, between two given lines, ... ..	125
—, <b>third</b> ; to find, to two given lines (less), ... ..	127
—; to find, to two given lines (greater), ... ..	128
—, <b>fourth</b> ; to find, to three given lines (less), ... ..	126
—; to find, to three given lines (greater), ... ..	126
<b>Rectangle</b> ; to construct, two sides given, ... ..	38
—; to construct, one side and diagonal given, ... ..	38
—; to inscribe, in given triangle, side equal to given line, ...	96
—; to construct, similar to given rectangle, ... ..	135
—; to construct, equal in area to given square, ... ..	140
—; to construct, equal in area to given triangle, ... ..	141
—; to construct, equal in area to given rectangle, ... ..	141
—; to construct, having a given side, equal in area to a given triangle, ... ..	142
—; to construct, equal in area to given circle, ... ..	144
<b>Rectilinear figure</b> ; to convert, into triangle of equal area, ...	160.
—; to reduce, to an equivalent figure, having a less number of sides, ... ..	161
—; to construct, area being given in proportion to another rectilinear figure of the same kind, ... ..	165
—; to change, into another rectilinear figure of equal area, but having one side more, &c., ... ..	175

	PAGE
<b>Reduced copy</b> ; to make, of any given figure, ... ..	176
<b>Rhomboid</b> ; to construct, two adjacent sides and diagonal given, ...	40
—; to construct, two adjacent sides and angle given, ... ..	41
<b>Rhombus</b> ; to construct, side and diagonal given, ... ..	39
—; to construct, side and angle given, ... ..	40
<b>Semicircles, three</b> ; to inscribe, within equilateral triangle, having adjacent diameters equal ( <b>The Trefoil</b> ), ... ..	100
—; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	101
<b>Semicircles, four</b> ; to inscribe within given square, each touching two sides of square ( <b>The Quatrefoil</b> ), ... ..	102
—; to inscribe within given square, each touching one side of the square, ... ..	103
<b>Semicircles, any number of</b> ; to inscribe, in given circle, ... ..	104
<b>Spiral</b> ; to construct of one revolution, ... ..	178
—, <b>common</b> ; to construct, on given diameter, ... ..	177
<b>Square</b> ; to construct, on given base, ... ..	36
—; to construct, diagonal given, ... ..	37
—; to inscribe, within circle, ... ..	91
—; to inscribe, within triangle, ... ..	92
—; to inscribe, within rhombus, ... ..	92
—; to inscribe, within trapezium, ... ..	93
—; to inscribe, within pentagon, ... ..	94
—; to inscribe, within hexagon, ... ..	94
—; to inscribe, within quadrant, ... ..	95
—; to describe, about circle, ... ..	119
—; to construct, within given square, concentric with it, ... ..	134
—; to construct, equal in area to given rectangle, ... ..	147
—; to construct, having any number of square inches, ... ..	147
—; to construct, equal in area to given triangle, ... ..	148
—; to construct, area one-third greater than given square, ... ..	148
—; to construct, area one-third less than given square, ... ..	149
—; to inscribe, within given square, proportional in area, ... ..	150
—; to construct, equal in area to trapezium, ... ..	151
—; to construct, equal in area to any number of squares, ... ..	152
—; to construct, equal in area to any given polygon, ... ..	153
<b>Straight line</b> ; to bisect, ... ..	6
—; to divide, into extreme and mean proportion, ... ..	128
—; to divide, successively into half, third, &c., ... ..	129
—; to divide, in point, ratio 2 : 3, ... ..	129
—; to divide, in point; whole : part :: 5 : 3, ... ..	130
—; to draw, equal to half circumference of circle, ... ..	143
<b>Tangent</b> ; to draw, to given circle, point of contact in circumference, ...	51
—; to draw, to given circle, point outside circumference, ... ..	51
—; to draw, on outside of two given circles, placed apart, ... ..	52
—; to draw, between two given circles, placed apart, ... ..	53
—; to draw, to point of contact in arc of circle, where the centre cannot be obtained, ... ..	53

	PAGE
<b>Tangent</b> ; to draw, to curve of ellipse, at given point of contact, ...	82
<b>Tangents, exterior</b> ; to draw one or two, common to two given circles, ... ..	171
<b>Trapezium</b> ; to construct, equal to given trapezium, ... ..	41
—; to construct, adjacent pairs of sides given, and diagonal, ...	42
—; to construct, diagonal and angles at extremities given, ...	43
—; to construct, similar to given trapezium, ... ..	136
<b>Triangle</b> ; to construct, three sides given, ... ..	24
—; to find centre of, ... ..	26
—; to construct, base and angles at base given, ... ..	26
—; to construct, altitude and angles at base given, ... ..	27
—; to construct, base, altitude, and one side given, ... ..	27
—; to construct, given base, angles of $60^\circ$ , $30^\circ$ , and $90^\circ$ , ...	28
—; to bisect, by line parallel to one of its sides, ... ..	29
—; to describe, about given circle, angles being equal to those of given triangle, ... ..	117
—; to inscribe, within, and equidistant, and similar to, given triangle, ... ..	131
—; to describe, about, and equidistant, and similar to, given triangle, ... ..	132
—; to inscribe, in circle, similar to given triangle, ... ..	133
—; to construct, similar to given triangle, perimeter equal to given straight line, ... ..	133
—; to inscribe, within given triangle, similar to another triangle, ...	134
—; to construct, equal in area to given trapezium, ... ..	151
—; to construct, on given base, area equal to given triangle, ...	156
—; to construct, similar to given triangle, twice its area, ...	156
—; to bisect, line perpendicular to one of its sides, ... ..	157
—; to construct, equal in area to two dissimilar triangles, ...	158
—; to divide, into any number of equal parts, by lines drawn from each angle to a point within the triangle, ... ..	158
—; to divide, into any number of equal parts, by lines drawn from a given point in one of its sides, ... ..	159
—; to divide, into any number of equal parts, by lines drawn from a given point within the triangle, ... ..	160
—; to construct, equal in area to any given polygon, ... ..	162
—; to construct, equal in area to any given circle, ... ..	163
<b>Undecagon</b> ; to inscribe, within given circle, ... ..	63
—; to construct, on given line, ... ..	70

## INDEX TO PROBLEMS IN SOLID GEOMETRY.

---

	PAGE
<b>Angle</b> ; to determine between two planes, ... ..	219
<b>Cone</b> ; to find its plan, elevation being given, ... ..	208
— ; to find its elevation, plan being given, ... ..	209
— ; to project, whose axis is inclined at angle of $45^\circ$ to the horizontal plane, but parallel to the vertical, ... ..	237
— ; to draw the section of, when cut by a plane parallel to its base, ... ..	245
— ; to draw the sectional elevation of, when cut by a vertical plane, ... ..	255
— ; to find the projection of, standing on its base, when the section plane is perpendicular to the vertical plane, and making an angle with the horizontal plane ; also a projection of the cone, showing the true form of the section, ... ..	256
— ; to find the projection of, standing on its base, when the section plane is parallel to one side of the cone, and perpendicular to the vertical plane, also the true form of the section, ... ..	258
<b>Cube</b> ; to find its plan, elevation being given, ... ..	200
— ; to find its plan, elevation being given, one face inclined to the ground at an angle of $60^\circ$ , another face at an angle of $30^\circ$ , ... ..	200
— ; to find its elevation, plan being given, ... ..	201
— ; to construct the projections of, having a face and one of its edges inclined at given angles, ... ..	227
— ; to find the projection of, when one of its diagonals is perpendicular to the plane of projection, ... ..	228
— ; to find section of, ... ..	247
<b>Cylinder</b> ; to find the plan of, elevation being given, ... ..	207
— ; to find the elevation of, plan being given, ... ..	208
— <b>section</b> ; to draw, when lying on the ground with its ends parallel to the vertical plane, and at right angles to the horizontal plane ; the plane of section being parallel to the axis of the cylinder, ... ..	247
— ; to draw the curve of penetration of two, whose axes are at right angles to each other, ... ..	260

	PAGE
<b>Cylinder section</b> ; to draw the curve of penetration of two, whose diameters are equal, and whose axes are at right angles to each other, ... ..	261
—; to draw the curve of penetration of two, whose diameters are equal, and whose axes are at right angles to each other, one of the cylinders being inclined to the vertical plane, ...	262
<b>Dodecahedron</b> ; to draw the plan and elevation of, when one edge of its base is inclined at an angle of $30^\circ$ to the ground line, ... ..	243
<b>Equilateral triangle</b> ; to draw the plan of, two of its sides inclined at $60^\circ$ and $30^\circ$ to the horizon, and to determine the inclination of the plane in which it is situated, ... ..	222
<b>Line</b> ; to draw its plan, elevation given at right angles to the vertical plane, ... ..	194
—; to find the plan of, its elevation being given parallel to the two planes of projection, ... ..	195
—; to find the plan of, its elevation being given parallel to the horizontal plane, but inclined to the vertical plane of projection, ... ..	196
—; to find the plan of, inclined to both planes of projection, its elevation being given, ... ..	196
—; to find elevation of, its plan being given, ... ..	198
—; traces of, given, to find its projections, ... ..	213
—; given, projections, to find its length, ... ..	213
—; given, projections of, to find the angles which it makes with the planes of projection, ... ..	214
—, any; to determine the plan and elevation of, inclined at $60^\circ$ to the horizontal plane, and $20^\circ$ to the vertical plane, ...	221
<b>Octahedron</b> ; to construct the projections of, when its axis is vertical, ... ..	239
—; to construct the projections of, when it lies on its face on the horizontal plane, ... ..	241
—; to construct the plan and elevation of, when resting on one of its faces, and when one edge of this face makes an angle of $15^\circ$ with the vertical plane, ... ..	242
<b>Parallel planes</b> ; traces of being given, to find the distance between them, ... ..	217
—; to determine, by traces, and given distance, ... ..	218
<b>Pipe, hollow</b> ; to draw section of, ... ..	246
<b>Plane</b> ; to draw, so that it makes a given angle with a given plane, and passes through a line in the first, ... ..	220
—; to determine by its traces, containing three given points, ...	224
<b>Planes, two</b> ; traces of, being given, to find the projections of their common intersection, ... ..	215
<b>Point</b> ; to find the plan of, elevation being given, ... ..	194
<b>Prism, triangular</b> ; to project the section of, when cut by an oblique plane, ... ..	248

	PAGE
<b>Prism, square</b> ; to draw the plan of, its elevation being given, ...	202
—, <b>pentagonal</b> ; to draw the plan of, its elevation being given, ...	203
—, <b>hexagonal</b> ; to find the elevation of, its plan being given, ...	204
—; to draw the plan and elevation of, which has its axis inclined $40^\circ$ to the paper, and one face parallel to the vertical plane, ...	230
—; to find the plan and elevation of, the height of which is $30'$ , and length of one side $10'$ , on a scale of $20'$ to the inch; the front face being parallel to the vertical plane, ...	232
<b>Pyramid, square</b> ; to find the elevation of, its plan being given, ...	206
—; to find the vertical projection of the section, parallel to the section plane, the trace of the plane, which is vertical, being at right angles to the plan of one of the lateral edges of the pyramid, ...	252
—; to draw the horizontal projection of the section of, when cut by a plane parallel to its base, the plane of the base of the pyramid being inclined at $40^\circ$ , ...	254
—, <b>pentagonal</b> ; to draw the plan of, when one edge of its base is inclined at an angle of $45^\circ$ , ...	233
—; to construct the sectional plan and elevation of, when standing on its base on the horizontal plane, ...	250
—; to construct the sectional elevation and plan of, when standing on its base on the horizontal plane, ...	251
—, <b>hexagonal</b> ; to find the plan of, its elevation being given, ...	204
—; to determine the plan of, when lying on one of its faces on the horizontal plane, ...	234
—; to project, when its axis is inclined at an angle of $50^\circ$ to the horizontal plane, but parallel to the vertical, ...	235
<b>Rectangular surface</b> ; to find the plan of the end elevation of, when given parallel to the horizontal plane, ...	197
<b>Solid, any</b> ; the projections of, being given, to determine other projections from them, ...	236
<b>Sphere</b> ; to find both plan and elevation of, ...	210
<b>Square</b> ; to draw the plan of, when its surface is inclined $42^\circ$ , and one of its sides is horizontal, ...	229
<b>Straight lines, two</b> ; to determine the angle contained by, given by their projections, ...	216
<b>Tetrahedron</b> ; to construct the projections of, ...	239
—; to construct the sectional elevation of, upon a vertical plane parallel to the section plane, the trace of which is at right angles to one of the lateral edges of the solid, ...	249
<b>Traces of plane</b> ; being given, to find the angles which it makes with the planes of projection, ...	223



PRINTED BY G. PHILIP AND SON, LIVERPOOL.

PHILIPS'  
EDUCATIONAL CATALOGUE.  
—  
ATLASES.  
—

*Philips' Comprehensive School Atlas*

Of Ancient and Modern Geography, comprising Thirty-seven Modern and Seven Ancient Maps, constructed from the latest and best authorities. The Maps carefully printed in colors. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Accompanied by a Consulting Index, carefully compiled. New and improved edition. Imperial 8vo., strongly half-bound, 10s. 6d.

*Philips' Student's Atlas,*

Comprising Thirty-eight authentic Maps of the Principal Countries of the World. The Maps carefully printed in colors. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. With a copious Consulting Index. Imperial 8vo., strongly bound in cloth, 7s. 6d.

*Philips' Select School Atlas,*

Comprising Twenty-four authentic Maps of the Principal Countries of the World. The Maps carefully printed in colors. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. With a copious Consulting Index. Imperial 8vo., new and cheaper edition, strongly bound in cloth, 5s.

*Philips' Introductory School Atlas,*

Comprising Eighteen Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, clearly engraved, and carefully printed in colors. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Accompanied by a Consulting Index. New and cheaper edition. Imperial 8vo., bound in cloth, 3s. 6d.

*Philips' Young Student's Atlas,*

Comprising Thirty-six Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, printed in colors. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 4to., bound in cloth, 3s. 6d.

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

---

*Philips' Atlas for Beginners,*

Comprising Thirty-two Maps of the Principal Countries of the World, constructed from the best authorities, and engraved in the best style. New and enlarged edition, with a valuable Consulting Index, on a new plan. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. The Maps beautifully printed in colors. Crown quarto, strongly bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

This favourite Atlas, which is in use in most of the Principal Schools in Great Britain and the Colonies, contains all the Maps that are required by a Junior Class of Learners, and may be used conjointly with any Elementary Book on Geography. It is, however, more especially designed as a Companion to Hughes' "Elementary Class-Book of Modern Geography," every name contained in which work will be found in the Maps comprising this Atlas.

*Philips' Handy Atlas of General Geography,*

Containing Thirty-two Maps, with a Consulting Index. Edited by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Crown 8vo., strongly bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

*Philips' Young Scholar's Atlas.*

New and enlarged edition, containing Twenty-four Maps, printed in colors. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S. Imperial 4to, bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

*Philips' First School Atlas.*

New and enlarged edition, containing Twenty-four Maps, full colored. Crown quarto, bound in cloth, 1s.

*Philips' Shilling Atlas,*

Containing Twelve Imperial quarto Maps of Modern Geography, constructed from the most recent authorities, carefully printed in colors. Imperial 4to., in illustrated cover, 1s.

*Philips' Preparatory Atlas,*

Containing Sixteen Maps, full colored. Crown quarto, in neat cover, 6d.

*Philips' Preparatory Outline Atlas.*

Sixteen Maps. Crown quarto, printed on fine cream-wove paper, in neat cover, 6d.

32, FLEET STREET, LONDON; AND LIVERPOOL.

---

*Philips' Preparatory Atlas of Blank Projections.*

Sixteen Maps. Crown quarto, printed on fine cream-wove paper, in neat cover, 6d.

---

*Philips' Elementary Atlas for Young Learners.*

Sixteen Maps. Full colored. Small quarto, in neat cover, 6d.

---

*Philips' Elementary Outline Atlas.*

Sixteen Maps. Small quarto, printed on fine cream-wove paper, in neat cover, 6d.

---

*Philips' Initiatory Atlas for Young Learners,*

Containing Twelve Maps, constructed from the best authorities. Imperial 16mo., neat cover, 3d.; with the Maps colored, 6d.; cloth limp, 8d.; strongly bound in cloth, 1s.

---

*Philips' Atlas of Wales,*

Comprising Twelve Maps of the separate Counties. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Beautifully printed in colors. Crown 4to., neat cover, 6d.

---

*Philips' Atlas of the British Empire throughout the World,*

A Series of Sixteen Maps, with Explanatory and Statistical Notes, by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. New edition, corrected to date. Imperial 8vo., bound in cloth, 3s. 6d.

---

*Philips' School Atlas of Australia,*

Comprising Maps of the separate Colonies, including a General Map of Australia, and Maps of New Zealand and Tasmania, constructed and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. The Maps carefully printed in colors. Crown quarto, bound in cloth, 2s.

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

---

*Philips' School Atlas of New Zealand,*

Comprising Eleven Maps, constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S.  
The Maps carefully printed in colors. Crown quarto, bound  
in cloth, 2s.

---

*Hughes's Training School Atlas,*

A Series of Maps illustrating the Physical Geography of the Great  
Divisions of the Globe. The Maps carefully printed in colors.  
New and enlarged edition. By William Hughes, F.R.G.S.,  
author of a "Class-Book of Physical Geography," &c., &c.  
Medium folio, cloth lettered, 15s.

---

The Training-School Atlas is a work altogether distinct in character from any  
of those previously described. It consists of a series of Maps (sixteen in  
number) designed to illustrate, on a scale of large size, and in a strictly clear  
and methodical manner, the leading features in the Physical Geography—1st,  
of the World at large; 2ndly, of the Great Divisions of the Globe (Europe, &c.);  
3rdly, of the British Islands; and lastly, of the Holy Land. The Political  
Divisions of the earth at the present time are embodied upon the information  
thus afforded, but in such a manner as not to interfere with its clear and  
distinct exposition.

---

*Philips' School Atlas of Physical Geography,*

Comprising a Series of Maps and Diagrams illustrating the Natural  
Features, Climates, Various Productions, and Chief Natural  
Phenomena of the Globe. Edited by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.  
Imperial 8vo., strongly bound in cloth, 10s. 6d.

---

\* \* This Atlas is intended as a companion volume to Hughes's "Class-book  
of Physical Geography."

---

*Philips' Physical Atlas for Beginners,*

Comprising Twelve Maps, constructed by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.,  
and adapted for use in Elementary Classes. The Maps very  
clearly engraved, and beautifully printed in colors. New and  
cheaper edition. Crown quarto, stiff cover, 1s.; cloth  
lettered, 1s. 6d.

---

\* \* This Atlas is intended to accompany "Phillips' Elementary Class-Book of  
Physical Geography."

---

*Philips' School Atlas of Classical Geography,*

A Series of Eighteen Maps, constructed by William Hughes,  
F.R.G.S., and engraved in the first style of the art. The  
Maps printed in colors. A carefully compiled Consulting  
Index accompanies the work, in which is given the *modern* as  
well as the ancient names of places. Medium quarto, bound  
in cloth, 5s.

32, FLEET STREET, LONDON ; AND LIVERPOOL.

---

*Philips' Handy Classical Atlas,*

A Series of Eighteen Maps, constructed by W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.; clearly and distinctly engraved, and beautifully printed in colors. Medium 8vo., cloth lettered, 2s. 6d.

---

*Philips' School Atlas of Scripture Geography,*

A Series of Twelve Maps, constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S., and engraved in the best style. The Maps carefully printed in colors. New and cheaper edition. Crown 4to., in stiff cover, 1s.; cloth lettered, 1s. 6d.; with a valuable Consulting Index, and strongly bound in cloth, 2s. 6d.

---

*Philips' Smaller Scripture Atlas,*

Containing Twelve Maps, constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. The Maps beautifully printed in colors. Imperial 16mo., illustrated cover, 6d.; cloth lettered, 1s.

---

**OUTLINE AND BLANK  
ATLASES.**

---

*Philips' Atlas of Outline Maps,*

For the use of Schools and for Private Tuition. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Size—11 inches by 13 inches. Three Series, each containing Thirteen Maps, stitched in a neat cover, 3s.

---

*Philips' Atlas of Blank Projections,*

With the Lines of Latitude and Longitude, intended for the use of Students learning to construct Maps. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Size—11 inches by 13 inches. Three Series, each containing Thirteen Maps, stitched in a neat cover, 3s.

---

*Hughes's Atlas of Outline Maps,*

With the Physical Features clearly and accurately delineated; consisting of Eastern Hemisphere—Western Hemisphere—Europe—Asia—Africa—North America—South America—Australia—The British Islands—England and Wales—Scotland—Ireland—France—Spain—Germany—Italy—Greece—India—Palestine. Size—21 inches by 17 inches. Medium folio, bound in cloth, 7s. 6d.

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

---

*Hughes's Atlas of Blank Projections,*

Containing the same Maps as in the "Outline Atlas," and corresponding in size and scale. Size—21 inches by 17 inches. Medium folio, bound in cloth, 7s. 6d.

---

*Philips' Imperial Outline Atlas.*

Size—11 inches by 13 inches. Printed on Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing Twelve Maps, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

---

*Philips' Imperial Atlas of Blank Projections.*

Size—11 inches by 13 inches. Printed on Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing Twelve Maps, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

---

*Philips' Outline Atlas for Beginners,*

Being Outlines of the Maps in Philips' "Atlas for Beginners." Size—10 inches by 8 inches. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing Sixteen Maps, demy quarto, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

---

*Philips' Atlas of Blank Projections for  
Beginners,*

Uniform in size and scale with the "Outline Atlas." Size—10 inches by 8 inches. Printed on fine Drawing Paper. Two Series, each containing Sixteen Maps, demy quarto, stitched in neat cover, 1s.

---

*Philips' Outline Atlas,*

For Students Preparing for the Oxford or Cambridge Local Examinations. In neat cover. Junior Classes, 1s. 6d.; for Senior Classes, 2s.

**EDUCATIONAL MAPS.**

*Philips' Series of Large School-room Maps.*

With the Physical Features boldly and distinctly delineated, and the Political Boundaries carefully colored. Size—5 feet 8 inches by 4 feet 6 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished. Constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S.

**LIST OF THE MAPS.**

*Price Sixteen Shillings each.*

THE WORLD IN HEMI-SPHERES.	AUSTRALIA.
EUROPE.	NEW SOUTH WALES.
ASIA.	ENGLAND AND WALES.
AFRICA.	SCOTLAND.
NORTH AMERICA.	IRELAND.
SOUTH AMERICA.	PALESTINE.
	INDIA.

*Price Twenty-one Shillings each.*

THE WORLD ON MERCATOR'S PROJECTION.	OCEANIA, on a Scale of two degrees to an inch, shewing the situation of New Zealand and the Australian Colonies relatively to the shores of Asia and North America, with the intervening Islands.
THE BRITISH ISLANDS.	
NEW ZEALAND, by Dr. Hector and Thos. A. Bowden, B.A.	

*Supplementary Maps to the Series.*

- SCHOOL WALL MAP OF THE WORLD, ON GALL'S CYLINDRICAL PROJECTION. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Size—6 feet 6 inches by 4 feet 7 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished, £1 5s.
- PHILIPS' INDUSTRIAL MAP OF ENGLAND AND WALES, with part of SCOTLAND ; showing the Lines of Railway, the Seats of the Principal Manufactures, and the Districts of Mines and Minerals ; distinguishing Canals and Navigable Rivers, tracing the Tracks of Foreign and Coasting Steam Vessels, marking the Position of Lighthouses, &c. Constructed from the most authentic sources, and revised by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Size—6 feet by 4 feet 9 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished, £1 5s.



GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

*Philips' Smaller Series of School-room Maps.*

Size—3 feet by 2 feet 6 inches. Mounted on rollers and varnished, each 7s. 6d.

LIST OF THE MAPS.

Eastern Hemisphere.	Australia.
Western Hemisphere.	New Zealand.
Europe.	England and Wales.
Asia.	Scotland.
Africa.	Ireland.
North America.	Palestine.
South America.	Wanderings of the Israelites.

The above are reductions of the large series, constructed by William Hughes, F.R.G.S., and are designed for use in Private Schools and Families. They are clearly and distinctly engraved, and embody an amount of information not to be had in any similar series of Maps.

*Philips' New School Maps of the Counties of England.*

Prepared expressly for use in Public Elementary Schools, to meet the requirements of the New Code; the Physical Features are boldly delineated, and the style of Engraving is clear and distinct; the Railway System is a prominent feature, and every necessary detail has been carefully given.

**LANCASHIRE AND CHESHIRE.** Size—5 feet 8 inches by 4 feet 6 inches. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Scale—1½ mile to one inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 16s.

**LANCASHIRE.** Size—37 inches by 54 inches. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Scale 1½ mile to one inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 10s. 6d.

**YORKSHIRE.** Size—37 inches by 54 inches. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Scale—3 miles to one inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 10s. 6d.

**CHESHIRE.** Size—33 inches by 44 inches. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Scale—1½ mile to one inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 7s. 6d.

**STAFFORDSHIRE.** Size—35½ inches by 54 inches. Reduced from the Ordnance Survey. Drawn and engraved by John Bartholomew, F.R.G.S. Scale—2½ miles to 1 inch. Mounted on rollers and varnished, 12s.

\*.\* *Other Counties in Preparation.*

32, FLEET STREET, LONDON; AND LIVERPOOL.

---

PHILIPS'  
SERIES OF READING BOOKS

FOR USE IN

*Public Elementary Schools.*

EDITED BY

JOHN G. CROMWELL, M.A.,

PRINCIPAL OF ST. MARK'S COLLEGE, CHELSEA.

---

*Specially adapted to the requirements of the New Code.*

---

		S.	D.
PRIMER .....	80 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	0	6
FIRST BOOK—Part I. ....	96 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	0	6
FIRST BOOK—Part II. ....	96 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	0	6
SECOND BOOK .....	160 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	0	9
THIRD BOOK.....	208 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	1	0
FOURTH BOOK.....	288 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	1	4
FIFTH BOOK.....	320 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	1	9
SIXTH BOOK.....	352 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	2	0
POETICAL READING BOOK .....	352 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	2	6
FIRST POETICAL BOOK . ....	156 pp., strongly bound in cloth...	1	0

---

The present entirely New Series of Reading Books has been prepared with much care and labour under the personal supervision of the Editor; and it is believed everything has been done which experience in teaching could suggest to adapt them to the educational requirements of the present time.

The special aim of the Publishers has been to produce thoroughly good and durable books; they direct the attention of Teachers and School Managers to the *strength of the sewing* and *firmness of the binding*, both important features, which cannot fail to recommend them for use in Elementary Schools.

U

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

---

CLASS BOOKS, &c.

---

*A Class-Book of Modern Geography,*

With Examination Questions, by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. The Examination Questions are drawn from the result of much experience in tuition on the part of the Author, and will be found to add considerably to the value of the work, as a class-book for popular school use. New edition, 1875. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 3s. 6d.

\*.\* "Philips' Comprehensive School Atlas" is designed to accompany this work.

---

*An Elementary Class-Book of Modern Geography.*

By William Hughes, F.R.G.S. This volume is abridged from the larger class-book, and is designed for the use of less advanced pupils. New edition, 1875. Foolscap 8vo., 1s. 6d.

\*.\* "Philips' Atlas for Beginners" is designed to accompany this work.

---

*A Class-Book of Physical Geography.*

With numerous Diagrams and Examination Questions, by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. This volume has been prepared for popular school use, and exhibits, in a clear and methodical manner, the principal facts respecting the Natural Features, Productions, and Phenomena of the Earth.—New edition, entirely re-written and extended, with a Map of the World. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 3s. 6d.

\*.\* "Philips' School Atlas of Physical Geography" is designed to accompany this work.

---

*An Elementary Class-Book of Physical Geography.*

With Diagrams, by William Hughes, F.R.G.S. Intended as a Companion Text Book to "Philips' Physical Atlas for Beginners." Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 1s.

---

*An Elementary Treatise on Arithmetic*

For Schools and Colleges. By Thomas W. Piper, Normal Master and Lecturer in the National Society's Training College, Battersea, author of "Mental Arithmetic," &c. Crown 8vo., cloth, pp. 160, 1s. 6d.

32, FLEET STREET, LONDON ; AND LIVERPOOL.

---

*Advanced Arithmetic*

For Schools and Colleges. By Thomas W. Piper, Normal Master and Lecturer in the National Society's Training College, Battersea, author of "Mental Arithmetic for Training Colleges," &c. Crown 8vo., cloth, pp. 336, price 3s. 6d.

---

*A Class-Book of Inorganic Chemistry.*

With Tables of Chemical Analysis, and directions for their use ; compiled specially for Pupils preparing for the Oxford and Cambridge Middle-Class Examinations, and the Matriculation Examinations of the University of London. By D. Morris, B.A., Teacher of Chemistry in Liverpool College. Crown 8vo., cloth, 2s. 6d.

---

*Bible Reading Lessons,*

For Secular and other Schools. Edited by Thomas A. Bowden, B.A.Oxon. Foolscap 8vo., cloth. In Three Parts, each 1s.

---

*Bowden's Manual of New Zealand  
Geography,*

With Eleven Maps and Examination Questions. By Thomas A. Bowden, B.A., late Government Inspector of Schools, assisted by J. Hector, M.D., F.R.S., Geologist to the New Zealand Government. Two parts in One Vol., Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 3s. 6d.

Part 1.—Containing the General Geography of the Colony, with a sketch of its History and Productions.

Part 2.—Containing a descriptive account of each Province or Principal Division.

---

*Bowden's Geographical Outlines of New  
Zealand,*

With Two Maps, and Examination Questions. By Thomas A. Bowden, B.A.Oxon. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 1s.

---

*Brewer's Manual of English Grammar,*

Including the Analysis of Sentences, with copious Exercises. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 1s.

GEORGE PHILIP AND SON, PUBLISHERS,

---

*Brewer's Elementary English Grammar,*

Including the Analysis of Simple Sentences. Foolscap 8vo., stiff cover, 4d.

---

*Brewer's Outlines of English History,*

For the use of Students preparing for Examination. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 6d.

---

*Crawley's Historical Geography,*

For the use of Pupil Teachers, Students in Training Colleges, and Pupils preparing for the Civil Service Examinations. New Edition, by W. J. C. Crawley. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 2s.

---

**DAVIES' SCRIPTURE MANUALS.**

Designed for the use of Pupils preparing for the Oxford and Cambridge Local Examinations. By J. Davies, University of London.

Uniformly Printed on Foolscap 8vo., bound in cloth.

NOTES ON GENESIS - 1s.	NOTES ON JOSHUA - 1s.
NOTES ON EXODUS - 1s.	NOTES ON JUDGES - 1s.
NOTES ON ST. MARK 1s.	NOTES ON I. SAMUEL 1s.
NOTES ON ST. LUKE 1s. 6d.	NOTES ON II. SAMUEL 1s. 6d.
NOTES ON THE ACTS OF	NOTES ON I. KINGS - 1s. 6d.
THE APOSTLES - 1s. 6d.	NOTES ON II. KINGS - 1s. 6d.
NOTES ON THE GOSPEL	NOTES ON EZRA - - 1s.
OF ST. MATTHEW - 2s.	MANUAL OF THE CHURCH
NOTES ON ST. JOHN 2s. 6d.	CATECHISM - - 1s.

*Uniform with above,*

**DAVIES' MANUAL OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER,** containing the Order for Morning and Evening Prayer; the Litany; the Ante-Communion Service; the Order of Confirmation, and the Outlines of the History of the Book of Common Prayer; with a full explanation of the differences between the Old and the New Lectionary. Foolscap 8vo., cloth, 2s.









